

# THE ART OF COMPUTER PROGRAMMING

FASCICLE 1

## MMIX

DONALD E. KNUTH *Stanford University*

ADDISON-WESLEY



Internet page <http://www-cs-faculty.stanford.edu/~knuth/taocp.html> contains current information about this book and related books.  
See also <http://www-cs-faculty.stanford.edu/~knuth/mmix.html> for downloadable software, and <http://mmixmasters.sourceforge.net> for general news about MMIX.

Copyright © 1999 by Addison–Wesley

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior consent of the publisher, except that the official electronic file may be used to print single copies for personal (not commercial) use.

Zeroth printing (revision 15), 15 February 2004

## PREFACE

*fas·ci·cle* \ˈfasəkəl\ n ... 1: a small bundle ... an inflorescence consisting of  
a compacted cyme less capitate than a glomerule  
... 2: one of the divisions of a book published in parts

— P. B. GOVE, *Webster's Third New International Dictionary* (1961)

THIS IS THE FIRST of a series of updates that I plan to make available at regular intervals as I continue working toward the ultimate editions of *The Art of Computer Programming*.

I was inspired to prepare fascicles like this by the example of Charles Dickens, who issued his novels in serial form; he published a dozen installments of *Oliver Twist* before having any idea what would become of Bill Sikes! I was thinking also of James Murray, who began to publish 350-page portions of the Oxford English Dictionary in 1884, finishing the letter B in 1888 and the letter C in 1895. (Murray died in 1915 while working on the letter T; my task is, fortunately, much simpler than his.)

Unlike Dickens and Murray, I have computers to help me edit the material, so that I can easily make changes before putting everything together in its final form. Although I'm trying my best to write comprehensive accounts that need no further revision, I know that every page brings me hundreds of opportunities to make mistakes and to miss important ideas. My files are bursting with notes about beautiful algorithms that have been discovered, but computer science has grown to the point where I cannot hope to be an authority on all the material I wish to cover. Therefore I need extensive feedback from readers before I can finalize the official volumes.

In other words, I think these fascicles will contain a lot of Good Stuff, and I'm excited about the opportunity to present everything I write to whoever wants to read it, but I also expect that beta-testers like you can help me make it Way Better. As usual, I will gratefully pay a reward of \$2.56 to the first person who reports anything that is technically, historically, typographically, or politically incorrect.

Charles Dickens usually published his work once a month, sometimes once a week; James Murray tended to finish a 350-page installment about once every 18 months. My goal, God willing, is to produce two 128-page fascicles per year. Most of the fascicles will represent new material destined for Volumes 4 and higher; but sometimes I will be presenting amendments to one or more of the earlier volumes. For example, Volume 4 will need to refer to topics that belong in Volume 3, but weren't invented when Volume 3 first came out. With luck, the entire work will make sense eventually.

Fascicle Number One is about MMIX, the long-promised replacement for MIX. Thirty years have passed since the MIX computer was designed, and computer architecture has been converging during those years towards a rather different style of machine. Therefore I decided in 1990 to replace MIX with a new computer that would contain even less saturated fat than its predecessor.

Exercise 1.3.1–25 in the first three editions of Volume 1 spoke of an extended MIX called MixMaster, which was upward compatible with the old version. But MixMaster itself has long been hopelessly obsolete. It allowed for several gigabytes of memory, but one couldn't even use it with ASCII code to print lowercase letters. And ouch, its standard subroutine calling convention was irrevocably based on self-modifying instructions! Decimal arithmetic and self-modifying code were popular in 1962, but they sure have disappeared quickly as machines have gotten bigger and faster. Fortunately the new RISC machines have a very appealing structure, so I've had a chance to design a new computer that is not only up to date but also fun.

Many readers are no doubt thinking, "Why does Knuth replace MIX by another machine instead of just sticking to a high-level programming language? Hardly anybody uses assemblers these days." Such people are entitled to their opinions, and they need not bother reading the machine-language parts of my books. But the reasons for machine language that I gave in the preface to Volume 1, written in the early 1960s, remain valid today:

- One of the principal goals of my books is to show how high-level constructions are actually implemented in machines, not simply to show how they are applied. I explain coroutine linkage, tree structures, random number generation, high-precision arithmetic, radix conversion, packing of data, combinatorial searching, recursion, etc., from the ground up.
- The programs needed in my books are generally so short that their main points can be grasped easily.
- People who are more than casually interested in computers should have at least some idea of what the underlying hardware is like. Otherwise the programs they write will be pretty weird.
- Machine language is necessary in any case, as output of some of the software that I describe.
- Expressing basic methods like algorithms for sorting and searching in machine language makes it possible to carry out meaningful studies of the effects of cache and RAM size and other hardware characteristics (memory speed, pipelining, multiple issue, lookaside buffers, the size of cache blocks, etc.) when comparing different schemes.

Moreover, if I did use a high-level language, what language should it be? In the 1960s I would probably have chosen Algol W; in the 1970s, I would then have had to rewrite my books using Pascal; in the 1980s, I would surely have changed everything to C; in the 1990s, I would have had to switch to C++ and then probably to Java. In the 2000s, yet another language will no doubt be *de*

*rigueur*. I cannot afford the time to rewrite my books as languages go in and out of fashion; languages aren't the point of my books, the point is rather what you can do in your favorite language. My books focus on timeless truths.

Therefore I will continue to use English as the high-level language in *The Art of Computer Programming*, and I will continue to use a low-level language to indicate how machines actually compute. Readers who only want to see algorithms that are already packaged in a plug-in way, using a trendy language, should buy other people's books.

The good news is that programming for MMIX is pleasant and simple. This fascicle presents

- 1) a programmer's introduction to the machine (replacing Section 1.3.1 of Volume 1);
- 2) the MMIX assembly language (replacing Section 1.3.2);
- 3) new material on subroutines, coroutines, and interpretive routines (replacing Sections 1.4.1, 1.4.2, and 1.4.3).

Of course, MIX appears in many places throughout Volumes 1–3, and dozens of programs need to be rewritten for MMIX. Readers who would like to help with this conversion process are encouraged to join the MMIXmasters, a happy group of volunteers based at [mmixmasters.sourceforge.net](http://mmixmasters.sourceforge.net).

I am extremely grateful to all the people who helped me with the design of MMIX. In particular, John Hennessy and Richard L. Sites deserve special thanks for their active participation and substantial contributions. Thanks also to Vladimir Ivanović for volunteering to be the MMIX grandmaster/webmaster.

*Stanford, California*  
*May 1999*

D. E. K.

*You can, if you want, rewrite forever.*  
— NEIL SIMON, *Rewrites: A Memoir* (1996)

## CONTENTS

<b>Chapter 1 — Basic Concepts</b>	1
1.3. MMIX	2
1.3.1. Description of MMIX	2
1.3.2. The MMIX Assembly Language	28
1.4. Some Fundamental Programming Techniques	52
1.4.1. Subroutines	52
1.4.2. Coroutines	66
1.4.3. Interpretive Routines	73
<b>Answers to Exercises</b>	94
<b>Index and Glossary</b>	127

### 1.3'. MMIX

IN MANY PLACES throughout this book we will have occasion to refer to a computer's internal machine language. The machine we use is a mythical computer called "MMIX." MMIX—pronounced *EM-micks*—is very much like nearly every general-purpose computer designed since 1985, except that it is, perhaps, nicer. The language of MMIX is powerful enough to allow brief programs to be written for most algorithms, yet simple enough so that its operations are easily learned.

The reader is urged to study this section carefully, since MMIX language appears in so many parts of this book. There should be no hesitation about learning a machine language; indeed, the author once found it not uncommon to be writing programs in a half dozen different machine languages during the same week! Everyone with more than a casual interest in computers will probably get to know at least one machine language sooner or later. Machine language helps programmers understand what really goes on inside their computers. And once one machine language has been learned, the characteristics of another are easy to assimilate. Computer science is largely concerned with an understanding of how low-level details make it possible to achieve high-level goals.

Software for running MMIX programs on almost any real computer can be downloaded from the website for this book (see page ii). The complete source code for the author's MMIX routines appears in the book *MMIXware [Lecture Notes in Computer Science 1750 (1999)]*; that book will be called "the MMIXware document" in the following pages.

#### 1.3.1'. Description of MMIX

MMIX is a polyunsaturated, 100% natural computer. Like most machines, it has an identifying number—the 2009. This number was found by taking 14 actual computers very similar to MMIX and on which MMIX could easily be simulated, then averaging their numbers with equal weight:

$$\begin{aligned} & (\text{Cray I} + \text{IBM 801} + \text{RISC II} + \text{Clipper C300} + \text{AMD 29K} + \text{Motorola 88K} \\ & \quad + \text{IBM 601} + \text{Intel i960} + \text{Alpha 21164} + \text{POWER 2} + \text{MIPS R4000} \\ & \quad + \text{Hitachi SuperH4} + \text{StrongARM 110} + \text{Sparc 64}) / 14 \\ & = 28126 / 14 = 2009. \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

The same number may also be obtained in a simpler way by taking Roman numerals.

**Bits and bytes.** MMIX works with patterns of 0s and 1s, commonly called binary digits or *bits*, and it usually deals with 64 bits at a time. For example, the 64-bit quantity

$$1001111000110111101111001101110010111111010010100111110000010110 \tag{2}$$

is a typical pattern that the machine might encounter. Long patterns like this can be expressed more conveniently if we group the bits four at a time and use

*hexadecimal digits* to represent each group. The sixteen hexadecimal digits are

$$\begin{array}{llll} 0 = 0000, & 4 = 0100, & 8 = 1000, & c = 1100, \\ 1 = 0001, & 5 = 0101, & 9 = 1001, & d = 1101, \\ 2 = 0010, & 6 = 0110, & a = 1010, & e = 1110, \\ 3 = 0011, & 7 = 0111, & b = 1011, & f = 1111. \end{array} \quad (3)$$

We shall always use a distinctive typeface for hexadecimal digits, as shown here, so that they won't be confused with the decimal digits 0–9; and we will usually also put the symbol # just before a hexadecimal number, to make the distinction even clearer. For example, (2) becomes

$$\#9e3779b97f4a7c16 \quad (4)$$

in hexadecimalese. Uppercase digits ABCDEF are often used instead of abcdef, because #9E3779B97F4A7C16 looks better than #9e3779b97f4a7c16 in some contexts; there is no difference in meaning.

A sequence of eight bits, or two hexadecimal digits, is commonly called a *byte*. Most computers now consider bytes to be their basic, individually addressable units of information; we will see that an MMIX program can refer to as many as  $2^{64}$  bytes, each with its own address from #0000000000000000 to #ffffffffffffffff. Letters, digits, and punctuation marks of languages like English are often represented with one byte per character, using the American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII). For example, the ASCII equivalent of MMIX is #4d4d4958. ASCII is actually a 7-bit code with control characters #00–#1f, printing characters #20–#7e, and a “delete” character #7f [see CACM 8 (1965), 207–214; 11 (1968), 849–852; 12 (1969), 166–178]. It was extended during the 1980s to an international standard 8-bit code known as Latin-1 or ISO 8859-1, thereby encoding accented letters: *pâté* is #70e274e9.

“Of the 256th squadron?”  
 “Of the fighting 256th Squadron,” Yossarian replied.  
 ... “That’s two to the fighting eighth power.”  
 — JOSEPH HELLER, *Catch-22* (1961)

A 16-bit code that supports nearly *every* modern language became an international standard during the 1990s. This code, known as Unicode or ISO/IEC 10646 UCS-2, includes not only Greek letters like  $\Sigma$  and  $\sigma$  (#03a3 and #03c3), Cyrillic letters like И and и (#0429 and #0449), Armenian letters like Շ and շ (#0547 and #0577), Hebrew letters like  $\psi$  (#05e9), Arabic letters like ش (#0634), and Indian letters like ऋ (#0936) or ॠ (#09b6) or ॡ (#0b36) or ॢ (#0bb7), etc., but also tens of thousands of East Asian ideographs such as the Chinese character for mathematics and computing, 算 (#7b97). It even has special codes for Roman numerals: MMIX = #216f216f21602169. Ordinary ASCII or Latin-1 characters are represented by simply giving them a leading byte of zero: *pâté* is #007000e2007400e9, à l’Unicode.



We will use the convenient term *wyde* to describe a 16-bit quantity like the wide characters of Unicode, because two-byte quantities are quite important in practice. We also need convenient names for four-byte and eight-byte quantities, which we shall call *tetrabytes* (or “tetras”) and *octabytes* (or “octas”). Thus

$$\begin{aligned} 2 \text{ bytes} &= 1 \text{ wyde;} \\ 2 \text{ wydes} &= 1 \text{ tetra;} \\ 2 \text{ tetras} &= 1 \text{ octa.} \end{aligned}$$

One octabyte equals four wydes equals eight bytes equals sixty-four bits.

Bytes and multibyte quantities can, of course, represent numbers as well as alphabetic characters. Using the binary number system,

- an unsigned byte can express the numbers 0 .. 255;
- an unsigned wyde can express the numbers 0 .. 65,535;
- an unsigned tetra can express the numbers 0 .. 4,294,967,295;
- an unsigned octa can express the numbers 0 .. 18,446,744,073,709,551,615.

Integers are also commonly represented by using *two's complement notation*, in which the leftmost bit indicates the sign: If the leading bit is 1, we subtract  $2^n$  to get the integer corresponding to an  $n$ -bit number in this notation. For example,  $-1$  is the signed byte `#ff`; it is also the signed wyde `#ffff`, the signed tetrabyte `#ffffffff`, and the signed octabyte `#ffffffffffffffff`. In this way

- a signed byte can express the numbers  $-128 \dots 127$ ;
- a signed wyde can express the numbers  $-32,768 \dots 32,767$ ;
- a signed tetra can express the numbers  $-2,147,483,648 \dots 2,147,483,647$ ;
- a signed octa can express the numbers  $-9,223,372,036,854,775,808 \dots 9,223,372,036,854,775,807$ .

**Memory and registers.** From a programmer's standpoint, an MMIX computer has  $2^{64}$  cells of *memory* and  $2^8$  general-purpose *registers*, together with  $2^5$  special registers (see Fig. 13). Data is transferred from the memory to the registers, transformed in the registers, and transferred from the registers to the memory. The cells of memory are called  $M[0], M[1], \dots, M[2^{64} - 1]$ ; thus if  $x$  is any octabyte,  $M[x]$  is a byte of memory. The general-purpose registers are called  $\$0, \$1, \dots, \$255$ ; thus if  $x$  is any byte,  $\$x$  is an octabyte.

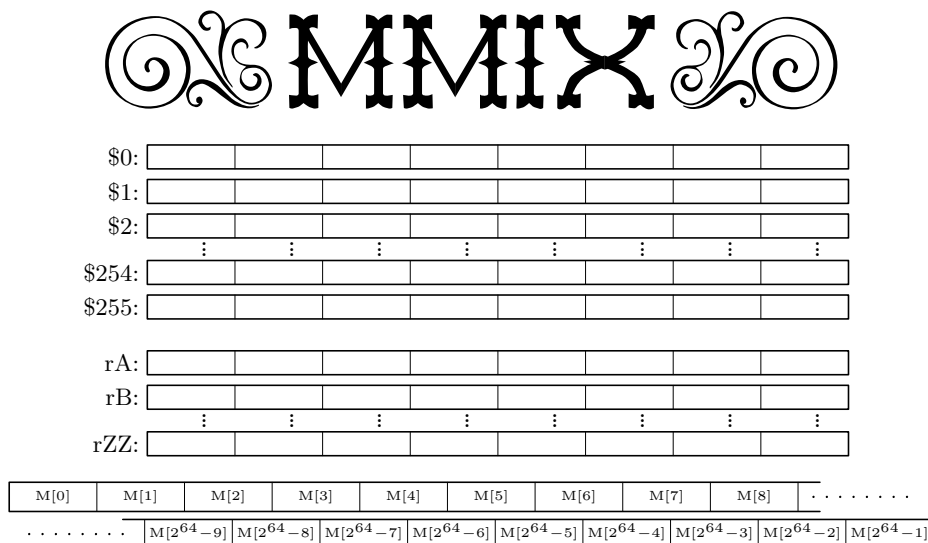
The  $2^{64}$  bytes of memory are grouped into  $2^{63}$  wydes,  $M_2[0] = M_2[1] = M[0]M[1]$ ,  $M_2[2] = M_2[3] = M[2]M[3]$ ,  $\dots$ ; each wyde consists of two consecutive bytes  $M[2k]M[2k+1] = M[2k] \times 2^8 + M[2k+1]$ , and is denoted either by  $M_2[2k]$  or by  $M_2[2k+1]$ . Similarly there are  $2^{62}$  tetrabytes

$$M_4[4k] = M_4[4k+1] = \dots = M_4[4k+3] = M[4k]M[4k+1] \dots M[4k+3],$$

and  $2^{61}$  octabytes

$$M_8[8k] = M_8[8k+1] = \dots = M_8[8k+7] = M[8k]M[8k+1] \dots M[8k+7].$$

In general if  $x$  is any octabyte, the notations  $M_2[x]$ ,  $M_4[x]$ , and  $M_8[x]$  denote the wyde, the tetra, and the octa that contain byte  $M[x]$ ; we ignore the least



**Fig. 13.** The MMIX computer, as seen by a programmer, has 256 general-purpose registers and 32 special-purpose registers, together with  $2^{64}$  bytes of virtual memory. Each register holds 64 bits of data.

significant  $\lg t$  bits of  $x$  when referring to  $M_t[x]$ . For completeness, we also write  $M_1[x] = M[x]$ , and we define  $M[x] = M[x \bmod 2^{64}]$  when  $x < 0$  or  $x \geq 2^{64}$ .

The 32 special registers of MMIX are called rA, rB, ..., rZ, rBB, rTT, rWW, rXX, rYY, and rZZ. Like their general-purpose cousins, they each hold an octabyte. Their uses will be explained later; for example, we will see that rA controls arithmetic interrupts while rR holds the remainder after division.

**Instructions.** MMIX's memory contains instructions as well as data. An *instruction* or “command” is a tetrabyte whose four bytes are conventionally called OP, X, Y, and Z. OP is the *operation code* (or “opcode,” for short); X, Y, and Z specify the *operands*. For example, #20010203 is an instruction with  $OP = \#20$ ,  $X = \#01$ ,  $Y = \#02$ , and  $Z = \#03$ , and it means “Set \$1 to the sum of \$2 and \$3.” The operand bytes are always regarded as unsigned integers.

Each of the 256 possible opcodes has a symbolic form that is easy to remember. For example, opcode #20 is ADD. We will deal almost exclusively with symbolic opcodes; the numeric equivalents can be found, if needed, in Table 1 below, and also in the endpapers of this book.

The X, Y, and Z bytes also have symbolic representations, consistent with the assembly language that we will discuss in Section 1.3.2'. For example, the instruction #20010203 is conventionally written ‘ADD \$1,\$2,\$3’, and the addition instruction in general is written ‘ADD \$X,\$Y,\$Z’. Most instructions have three operands, but some of them have only two, and a few have only one. When there are two operands, the first is X and the second is the two-byte quantity YZ; the symbolic notation then has only one comma. For example, the instruction

‘INCL \$X,YZ’ increases register \$X by the amount YZ. When there is only one operand, it is the unsigned three-byte number XYZ, and the symbolic notation has no comma at all. For example, we will see that ‘JMP @+4\*XYZ’ tells MMIX to find its next instruction by skipping ahead XYZ tetrabytes; the instruction ‘JMP @+1000000’ has the hexadecimal form #f003d090, because JMP = #f0 and 250000 = #03d090.

We will describe each MMIX instruction both informally and formally. For example, the informal meaning of ‘ADD \$X,\$Y,\$Z’ is “Set \$X to the sum of \$Y and \$Z”; the formal definition is ‘ $s(\$X) \leftarrow s(\$Y) + s(\$Z)$ ’. Here  $s(x)$  denotes the *signed integer* corresponding to the bit pattern  $x$ , according to the conventions of two’s complement notation. An assignment like  $s(x) \leftarrow N$  means that  $x$  is to be set to the bit pattern for which  $s(x) = N$ . (Such an assignment causes *integer overflow* if  $N$  is too large or too small to fit in  $x$ . For example, an ADD will overflow if  $s(\$Y) + s(\$Z)$  is less than  $-2^{63}$  or greater than  $2^{63} - 1$ . When we’re discussing an instruction informally, we will often gloss over the possibility of overflow; the formal definition, however, will make everything precise. In general the assignment  $s(x) \leftarrow N$  sets  $x$  to the binary representation of  $N \bmod 2^n$ , where  $n$  is the number of bits in  $x$ , and it signals overflow if  $N < -2^{n-1}$  or  $N \geq 2^{n-1}$ ; see exercise 5.)

**Loading and storing.** Although MMIX has 256 different opcodes, we will see that they fall into a few easily learned categories. Let’s start with the instructions that transfer information between the registers and the memory.

Each of the following instructions has a *memory address* A obtained by adding \$Y to \$Z. Formally,

$$A = (u(\$Y) + u(\$Z)) \bmod 2^{64} \quad (5)$$

is the sum of the *unsigned integers* represented by \$Y and \$Z, reduced to a 64-bit number by ignoring any carry that occurs at the left when those two integers are added. In this formula the notation  $u(x)$  is analogous to  $s(x)$ , but it considers  $x$  to be an unsigned binary number.

- LDB \$X,\$Y,\$Z (load byte):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow s(M_1[A])$ .
- LDW \$X,\$Y,\$Z (load wyde):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow s(M_2[A])$ .
- LDT \$X,\$Y,\$Z (load tetra):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow s(M_4[A])$ .
- LDO \$X,\$Y,\$Z (load octa):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow s(M_8[A])$ .

These instructions bring data from memory into register \$X, changing the data if necessary from a signed byte, wyde, or tetrabyte to a signed octabyte of the same value. For example, suppose the octabyte  $M_8[1002] = M_8[1000]$  is

$$M[1000]M[1001] \dots M[1007] = \#0123456789abcdef. \quad (6)$$

Then if \$2 = 1000 and \$3 = 2, we have A = 1002, and

```
LDB $1,$2,$3 sets $1 ← #0000000000000045;
LDW $1,$2,$3 sets $1 ← #0000000000004567;
LDT $1,$2,$3 sets $1 ← #0000000001234567;
LDO $1,$2,$3 sets $1 ← #0123456789abcdef.
```

But if  $\$3 = 5$ , so that  $A = 1005$ ,

```
LDB $1,$2,$3 sets $1 ← #fffffffffffffab;
LDW $1,$2,$3 sets $1 ← #ffffffffffff89ab;
LDT $1,$2,$3 sets $1 ← #ffffffff89abcdef;
LDO $1,$2,$3 sets $1 ← #0123456789abcdef.
```

When a signed byte or wyde or tetra is converted to a signed octa, its sign bit is “extended” into all positions to the left.

- LDBU  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (load byte unsigned):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow u(M_1[A])$ .
- LDWU  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (load wyde unsigned):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow u(M_2[A])$ .
- LDTU  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (load tetra unsigned):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow u(M_4[A])$ .
- LDOU  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (load octa unsigned):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow u(M_8[A])$ .

These instructions are analogous to LDB, LDW, LDT, and LDO, but they treat the memory data as *unsigned*; bit positions at the left of the register are set to zero when a short quantity is being lengthened. Thus, in the example above, LDBU  $\$1, \$2, \$3$  with  $\$2 + \$3 = 1005$  would set  $\$1 \leftarrow \#00000000000000ab$ .

The instructions LDO and LDOU actually have exactly the same behavior, because no sign extension or padding with zeros is necessary when an octabyte is loaded into a register. But a good programmer will use LDO when the sign is relevant and LDOU when it is not; then readers of the program can better understand the significance of what is being loaded.

- LDHT  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (load high tetra):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow u(M_4[A]) \times 2^{32}$ .

Here the tetrabyte  $M_4[A]$  is loaded into the *left* half of  $\$X$ , and the right half is set to zero. For example, LDHT  $\$1, \$2, \$3$  sets  $\$1 \leftarrow \#89abcdef00000000$ , assuming (6) with  $\$2 + \$3 = 1005$ .

- LDA  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (load address):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow A$ .

This instruction, which puts a memory address into a register, is essentially the same as the ADDU instruction described below. Sometimes the words “load address” describe its purpose better than the words “add unsigned.”

- STB  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (store byte):  $s(M_1[A]) \leftarrow s(\$X)$ .
- STW  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (store wyde):  $s(M_2[A]) \leftarrow s(\$X)$ .
- STT  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (store tetra):  $s(M_4[A]) \leftarrow s(\$X)$ .
- STO  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (store octa):  $s(M_8[A]) \leftarrow s(\$X)$ .

These instructions go the other way, placing register data into the memory. Overflow is possible if the (signed) number in the register lies outside the range of the memory field. For example, suppose register  $\$1$  contains the number  $-65536 = \#ffffffffff0000$ . Then if  $\$2 = 1000$ ,  $\$3 = 2$ , and (6) holds,

```
STB $1,$2,$3 sets M8[1000] ← #0123006789abcdef (with overflow);
STW $1,$2,$3 sets M8[1000] ← #0123000089abcdef (with overflow);
STT $1,$2,$3 sets M8[1000] ← #ffff000089abcdef;
STO $1,$2,$3 sets M8[1000] ← #ffffffffffff0000.
```

- STBU \$X,\$Y,\$Z (store byte unsigned):  
 $u(M_1[A]) \leftarrow u(\$X) \bmod 2^8$ .
  - STWU \$X,\$Y,\$Z (store wyde unsigned):  
 $u(M_2[A]) \leftarrow u(\$X) \bmod 2^{16}$ .
  - STTU \$X,\$Y,\$Z (store tetra unsigned):  
 $u(M_4[A]) \leftarrow u(\$X) \bmod 2^{32}$ .
  - STOU \$X,\$Y,\$Z (store octa unsigned):  $u(M_8[A]) \leftarrow u(\$X)$ .
- These instructions have exactly the same effect on memory as their signed counterparts STB, STW, STT, and STO, but overflow never occurs.
- STHT \$X,\$Y,\$Z (store high tetra):  $u(M_4[A]) \leftarrow \lfloor u(\$X)/2^{32} \rfloor$ .
- The left half of register \$X is stored in memory tetrabyte  $M_4[A]$ .
- STCO X,\$Y,\$Z (store constant octabyte):  $u(M_8[A]) \leftarrow X$ .
- A constant between 0 and 255 is stored in memory octabyte  $M_8[A]$ .

**Arithmetic operators.** Most of MMIX's operations take place strictly between registers. We might as well begin our study of the register-to-register operations by considering addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division, because computers are supposed to be able to compute.

- ADD \$X,\$Y,\$Z (add):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow s(\$Y) + s(\$Z)$ .
- SUB \$X,\$Y,\$Z (subtract):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow s(\$Y) - s(\$Z)$ .
- MUL \$X,\$Y,\$Z (multiply):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow s(\$Y) \times s(\$Z)$ .
- DIV \$X,\$Y,\$Z (divide):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow \lfloor s(\$Y)/s(\$Z) \rfloor$  [ $\$Z \neq 0$ ], and  
 $s(rR) \leftarrow s(\$Y) \bmod s(\$Z)$ .

Sums, differences, and products need no further discussion. The DIV command forms the quotient and remainder as defined in Section 1.2.4; the remainder goes into the special *remainder register* rR, where it can be examined by using the instruction GET \$X,rR described below. If the divisor \$Z is zero, DIV sets  $\$X \leftarrow 0$  and  $rR \leftarrow \$Y$  (see Eq. 1.2.4-(1)); an “integer divide check” also occurs.

- ADDU \$X,\$Y,\$Z (add unsigned):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow (u(\$Y) + u(\$Z)) \bmod 2^{64}$ .
- SUBU \$X,\$Y,\$Z (subtract unsigned):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow (u(\$Y) - u(\$Z)) \bmod 2^{64}$ .
- MULU \$X,\$Y,\$Z (multiply unsigned):  $u(rH\$X) \leftarrow u(\$Y) \times u(\$Z)$ .
- DIVU \$X,\$Y,\$Z (divide unsigned):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow \lfloor u(rD\$Y)/u(\$Z) \rfloor$ ,  $u(rR) \leftarrow u(rD\$Y) \bmod u(\$Z)$ , if  $u(\$Z) > u(rD)$ ; otherwise  $\$X \leftarrow rD$ ,  $rR \leftarrow \$Y$ .

Arithmetic on unsigned numbers never causes overflow. A full 16-byte product is formed by the MULU command, and the upper half goes into the special *himult register* rH. For example, when the unsigned number #9e3779b97f4a7c16 in (2) and (4) above is multiplied by itself we get

$$rH \leftarrow \#61c8864680b583ea, \quad \$X \leftarrow \#1bb32095ccdd51e4. \quad (7)$$

In this case the value of rH has turned out to be exactly  $2^{64}$  minus the original number #9e3779b97f4a7c16; this is not a coincidence! The reason is that (2) actually gives the first 64 bits of the binary representation of the golden ratio  $\phi^{-1} = \phi - 1$ , if we place a binary radix point at the *left*. (See Table 2 in Appendix A.) Squaring gives us an approximation to the binary representation of  $\phi^{-2} = 1 - \phi^{-1}$ , with the radix point now at the left of rH.

Division with **DIVU** yields the 8-byte quotient and remainder of a 16-byte dividend with respect to an 8-byte divisor. The upper half of the dividend appears in the special *dividend register* **rD**, which is zero at the beginning of a program; this register can be set to any desired value with the command **PUT rD,\$Z** described below. If **rD** is greater than or equal to the divisor, **DIVU \$X,\$Y,\$Z** simply sets  $\$X \leftarrow \text{rD}$  and  $\text{rR} \leftarrow \$Y$ . (This case always arises when  $\$Z$  is zero.) But **DIVU** never causes an integer divide check.

The **ADDU** instruction computes a memory address **A**, according to definition (5); therefore, as discussed earlier, we sometimes give **ADDU** the alternative name **LDA**. The following related commands also help with address calculation.

- **2ADDU \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (times 2 and add unsigned):  

$$u(\$X) \leftarrow (u(\$Y) \times 2 + u(\$Z)) \bmod 2^{64}.$$
- **4ADDU \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (times 4 and add unsigned):  

$$u(\$X) \leftarrow (u(\$Y) \times 4 + u(\$Z)) \bmod 2^{64}.$$
- **8ADDU \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (times 8 and add unsigned):  

$$u(\$X) \leftarrow (u(\$Y) \times 8 + u(\$Z)) \bmod 2^{64}.$$
- **16ADDU \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (times 16 and add unsigned):  

$$u(\$X) \leftarrow (u(\$Y) \times 16 + u(\$Z)) \bmod 2^{64}.$$

It is faster to execute the command **2ADDU \$X,\$Y,\$Y** than to multiply by 3, if overflow is not an issue.

- **NEG \$X,Y,\$Z** (negate):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow Y - s(\$Z)$ .
- **NEGU \$X,Y,\$Z** (negate unsigned):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow (Y - u(\$Z)) \bmod 2^{64}$ .

In these commands **Y** is simply an unsigned constant, not a register number (just as **X** was an unsigned constant in the **STCO** instruction). Usually **Y** is zero, in which case we can write simply **NEG \$X,\$Z** or **NEGU \$X,\$Z**.

- **SL \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (shift left):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow s(\$Y) \times 2^{u(\$Z)}$ .
- **SLU \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (shift left unsigned):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow (u(\$Y) \times 2^{u(\$Z)}) \bmod 2^{64}$ .
- **SR \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (shift right):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow \lfloor s(\$Y) / 2^{u(\$Z)} \rfloor$ .
- **SRU \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (shift right unsigned):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow \lfloor u(\$Y) / 2^{u(\$Z)} \rfloor$ .

**SL** and **SLU** both produce the same result in **\$X**, but **SL** might overflow while **SLU** never does. **SR** extends the sign when shifting right, but **SRU** shifts zeros in from the left. Therefore **SR** and **SRU** produce the same result in **\$X** if and only if **\$Y** is nonnegative or **\$Z** is zero. The **SL** and **SR** instructions are much faster than **MUL** and **DIV** by powers of 2. An **SLU** instruction is much faster than **MULU** by a power of 2, although it does not affect **rH** as **MULU** does. An **SRU** instruction is much faster than **DIVU** by a power of 2, although it is not affected by **rD**. The notation  $y \ll z$  is often used to denote the result of shifting a binary value  $y$  to the left by  $z$  bits; similarly,  $y \gg z$  denotes shifting to the right.

- **CMP \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (compare):  

$$s(\$X) \leftarrow [s(\$Y) > s(\$Z)] - [s(\$Y) < s(\$Z)].$$
- **CMPU \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (compare unsigned):  

$$s(\$X) \leftarrow [u(\$Y) > u(\$Z)] - [u(\$Y) < u(\$Z)].$$

These instructions each set **\$X** to either  $-1$ ,  $0$ , or  $1$ , depending on whether register **\$Y** is less than, equal to, or greater than register **\$Z**.

**Conditional instructions.** Several instructions base their actions on whether a register is positive, or negative, or zero, etc.

- CSN  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (conditional set if negative): if  $s(\$Y) < 0$ , set  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z$ .
- CSZ  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (conditional set if zero): if  $\$Y = 0$ , set  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z$ .
- CSP  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (conditional set if positive): if  $s(\$Y) > 0$ , set  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z$ .
- CSOD  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (conditional set if odd): if  $s(\$Y) \bmod 2 = 1$ , set  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z$ .
- CSNN  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (conditional set if nonnegative): if  $s(\$Y) \geq 0$ , set  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z$ .
- CSNZ  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (conditional set if nonzero): if  $\$Y \neq 0$ , set  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z$ .
- CSNP  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (conditional set if nonpositive): if  $s(\$Y) \leq 0$ , set  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z$ .
- CSEV  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (conditional set if even): if  $s(\$Y) \bmod 2 = 0$ , set  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z$ .

If register  $\$Y$  satisfies the stated condition, register  $\$Z$  is copied to register  $\$X$ ; otherwise nothing happens. A register is negative if and only if its leading (leftmost) bit is 1. A register is odd if and only if its trailing (rightmost) bit is 1.

- ZSN  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (zero or set if negative):  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z [s(\$Y) < 0]$ .
- ZSZ  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (zero or set if zero):  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z [\$Y = 0]$ .
- ZSP  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (zero or set if positive):  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z [s(\$Y) > 0]$ .
- ZSOD  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (zero or set if odd):  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z [s(\$Y) \bmod 2 = 1]$ .
- ZSNN  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (zero or set if nonnegative):  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z [s(\$Y) \geq 0]$ .
- ZSNZ  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (zero or set if nonzero):  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z [\$Y \neq 0]$ .
- ZSNP  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (zero or set if nonpositive):  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z [s(\$Y) \leq 0]$ .
- ZSEV  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (zero or set if even):  $\$X \leftarrow \$Z [s(\$Y) \bmod 2 = 0]$ .

If register  $\$Y$  satisfies the stated condition, register  $\$Z$  is copied to register  $\$X$ ; otherwise register  $\$X$  is set to zero.

**Bitwise operations.** We often find it useful to think of an octabyte  $x$  as a *vector*  $v(x)$  of 64 individual bits, and to perform operations simultaneously on each component of two such vectors.

- AND  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (bitwise and):  $v(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$Y) \wedge v(\$Z)$ .
- OR  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (bitwise or):  $v(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$Y) \vee v(\$Z)$ .
- XOR  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (bitwise exclusive-or):  $v(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$Y) \oplus v(\$Z)$ .
- ANDN  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (bitwise and-not):  $v(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$Y) \wedge \bar{v}(\$Z)$ .
- ORN  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (bitwise or-not):  $v(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$Y) \vee \bar{v}(\$Z)$ .
- NAND  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (bitwise not-and):  $\bar{v}(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$Y) \wedge v(\$Z)$ .
- NOR  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (bitwise not-or):  $\bar{v}(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$Y) \vee v(\$Z)$ .
- NXOR  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (bitwise not-exclusive-or):  $\bar{v}(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$Y) \oplus v(\$Z)$ .

Here  $\bar{v}$  denotes the *complement* of vector  $v$ , obtained by changing 0 to 1 and 1 to 0. The binary operations  $\wedge$ ,  $\vee$ , and  $\oplus$ , defined by the rules

$$\begin{array}{lll}
 0 \wedge 0 = 0, & 0 \vee 0 = 0, & 0 \oplus 0 = 0, \\
 0 \wedge 1 = 0, & 0 \vee 1 = 1, & 0 \oplus 1 = 1, \\
 1 \wedge 0 = 0, & 1 \vee 0 = 1, & 1 \oplus 0 = 1, \\
 1 \wedge 1 = 1, & 1 \vee 1 = 1, & 1 \oplus 1 = 0,
 \end{array} \tag{8}$$

are applied independently to each bit. Anding is the same as multiplying or taking the minimum; oring is the same as taking the maximum. Exclusive-oring is the same as adding mod 2.

- **MUX \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (bitwise multiplex):  $v(\$X) \leftarrow (v(\$Y) \wedge v(rM)) \vee (v(\$Z) \wedge \bar{v}(rM))$ . The MUX operation combines two bit vectors by looking at the special *multiplex mask register* rM, choosing bits of \$Y where rM is 1 and bits of \$Z where rM is 0.
- **SADD \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (sideways add):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow s(\sum(v(\$Y) \wedge \bar{v}(\$Z)))$ . The SADD operation counts the number of bit positions in which register \$Y has a 1 while register \$Z has a 0.

**Bytewise operations.** Similarly, we can regard an octabyte  $x$  as a vector  $b(x)$  of eight individual bytes, each of which is an integer between 0 and 255; or we can think of it as a vector  $w(x)$  of four individual wydes, or a vector  $t(x)$  of two unsigned tetras. The following operations deal with all components at once.

- **BDIF \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (byte difference):  $b(\$X) \leftarrow b(\$Y) \dot{-} b(\$Z)$ .
- **WDIF \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (wyde difference):  $w(\$X) \leftarrow w(\$Y) \dot{-} w(\$Z)$ .
- **TDIF \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (tetra difference):  $t(\$X) \leftarrow t(\$Y) \dot{-} t(\$Z)$ .
- **ODIF \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (octa difference):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow u(\$Y) \dot{-} u(\$Z)$ .

Here  $\dot{-}$  denotes the operation of *saturating subtraction*,

$$y \dot{-} z = \max(0, y - z). \quad (9)$$

These operations have important applications to text processing, as well as to computer graphics (when the bytes or wydes represent pixel values). Exercises 27–30 discuss some of their basic properties.

We can also regard an octabyte as an  $8 \times 8$  *Boolean matrix*, that is, as an  $8 \times 8$  array of 0s and 1s. Let  $m(x)$  be the matrix whose rows from top to bottom are the bytes of  $x$  from left to right; and let  $m^T(x)$  be the transposed matrix, whose *columns* are the bytes of  $x$ . For example, if  $x = \#9e3779b97f4a7c16$  is the octabyte (2), we have

$$m(x) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad m^T(x) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (10)$$

This interpretation of octabytes suggests two operations that are quite familiar to mathematicians, but we will pause a moment to define them from scratch.

If  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix and  $B$  is an  $n \times s$  matrix, and if  $\circ$  and  $\bullet$  are binary operations, the *generalized matrix product*  $A \circ \bullet B$  is the  $m \times s$  matrix  $C$  defined by

$$C_{ij} = (A_{i1} \bullet B_{1j}) \circ (A_{i2} \bullet B_{2j}) \circ \cdots \circ (A_{in} \bullet B_{nj}) \quad (11)$$

for  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j \leq s$ . [See K. E. Iverson, *A Programming Language* (Wiley, 1962), 23–24; we assume that  $\circ$  is associative.] An ordinary matrix product is obtained when  $\circ$  is  $+$  and  $\bullet$  is  $\times$ , but we obtain important operations



on Boolean matrices if we let  $\circ$  be  $\vee$  or  $\oplus$ :

$$(A \underset{\times}{\vee} B)_{ij} = A_{i1}B_{1j} \vee A_{i2}B_{2j} \vee \cdots \vee A_{in}B_{nj}; \quad (12)$$

$$(A \underset{\times}{\oplus} B)_{ij} = A_{i1}B_{1j} \oplus A_{i2}B_{2j} \oplus \cdots \oplus A_{in}B_{nj}. \quad (13)$$

Notice that if the rows of  $A$  each contain at most one 1, at most one term in (12) or (13) is nonzero. The same is true if the columns of  $B$  each contain at most one 1. Therefore  $A \underset{\times}{\vee} B$  and  $A \underset{\times}{\oplus} B$  both turn out to be the same as the ordinary matrix product  $A \underset{\times}{+} B = AB$  in such cases.

- **MOR \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (multiple or):  $m^T(\$X) \leftarrow m^T(\$Y) \underset{\times}{\vee} m^T(\$Z)$ ;  
equivalently,  $m(\$X) \leftarrow m(\$Z) \underset{\times}{\vee} m(\$Y)$ . (See exercise 32.)
- **MXOR \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (multiple exclusive-or):  $m^T(\$X) \leftarrow m^T(\$Y) \underset{\times}{\oplus} m^T(\$Z)$ ;  
equivalently,  $m(\$X) \leftarrow m(\$Z) \underset{\times}{\oplus} m(\$Y)$ .

These operations essentially set each byte of  $\$X$  by looking at the corresponding byte of  $\$Z$  and using its bits to select bytes of  $\$Y$ ; the selected bytes are then ored or xored together. If, for example, we have

$$\$Z = \#0102040810204080, \quad (14)$$

then both **MOR** and **MXOR** will set register  $\$X$  to the *byte reversal* of register  $\$Y$ : The  $k$ th byte from the left of  $\$X$  will be set to the  $k$ th byte from the right of  $\$Y$ , for  $1 \leq k \leq 8$ . On the other hand if  $\$Z = \#00000000000000ff$ , **MOR** and **MXOR** will set all bytes of  $\$X$  to zero except for the rightmost byte, which will become either the **OR** or the **XOR** of all eight bytes of  $\$Y$ . Exercises 33–37 illustrate some of the many practical applications of these versatile commands.

**Floating point operators.** MMIX includes a full implementation of the famous IEEE/ANSI Standard 754 for floating point arithmetic. Complete details of the floating point operations appear in Section 4.2 and in the *MMIXware* document; a rough summary will suffice for our purposes here.

Every octabyte  $x$  represents a floating binary number  $f(x)$  determined as follows: The leftmost bit of  $x$  is the sign ( $0 = '+'$ ,  $1 = '-'$ ); the next 11 bits are the *exponent*  $E$ ; the remaining 52 bits are the *fraction*  $F$ . The value represented is then

$$\begin{aligned} &\pm 0.0, \text{ if } E = F = 0 \text{ (zero);} \\ &\pm 2^{-1074}F, \text{ if } E = 0 \text{ and } F \neq 0 \text{ (denormal);} \\ &\pm 2^{E-1023}(1 + F/2^{52}), \text{ if } 0 < E < 2047 \text{ (normal);} \\ &\pm \infty, \text{ if } E = 2047 \text{ and } F = 0 \text{ (infinite);} \\ &\pm \text{NaN}(F/2^{52}), \text{ if } E = 2047 \text{ and } F \neq 0 \text{ (Not-a-Number).} \end{aligned}$$

The “short” floating point number  $f(t)$  represented by a tetrabyte  $t$  is similar, but its exponent part has only 8 bits and its fraction has only 23; the normal case  $0 < E < 255$  of a short float represents  $\pm 2^{E-127}(1 + F/2^{23})$ .

- **FADD \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (floating add):  $f(\$X) \leftarrow f(\$Y) + f(\$Z)$ .
- **FSUB \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (floating subtract):  $f(\$X) \leftarrow f(\$Y) - f(\$Z)$ .
- **FMUL \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (floating multiply):  $f(\$X) \leftarrow f(\$Y) \times f(\$Z)$ .
- **FDIV \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (floating divide):  $f(\$X) \leftarrow f(\$Y)/f(\$Z)$ .

- **FREM**  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (floating remainder):  $f(\$X) \leftarrow f(\$Y) \text{ rem } f(\$Z)$ .
- **FSQRT**  $\$X, \$Z$  or **FSQRT**  $\$X, Y, \$Z$  (floating square root):  $f(\$X) \leftarrow f(\$Z)^{1/2}$ .
- **FINT**  $\$X, \$Z$  or **FINT**  $\$X, Y, \$Z$  (floating integer):  $f(\$X) \leftarrow \text{int } f(\$Z)$ .
- **FCMP**  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (floating compare):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow [f(\$Y) > f(\$Z)] - [f(\$Y) < f(\$Z)]$ .
- **FEQL**  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (floating equal to):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow [f(\$Y) = f(\$Z)]$ .
- **FUN**  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (floating unordered):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow [f(\$Y) \parallel f(\$Z)]$ .
- **FCMPE**  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (floating compare with respect to epsilon):  
 $s(\$X) \leftarrow [f(\$Y) \succ f(\$Z) \text{ (f(rE))}] - [f(\$Y) \prec f(\$Z) \text{ (f(rE))}]$ , see 4.2.2–(21).
- **FEQLE**  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (floating equivalent with respect to epsilon):  
 $s(\$X) \leftarrow [f(\$Y) \approx f(\$Z) \text{ (f(rE))}]$ , see 4.2.2–(24).
- **FUNE**  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (floating unordered with respect to epsilon):  
 $s(\$X) \leftarrow [f(\$Y) \parallel f(\$Z) \text{ (f(rE))}]$ .
- **FIX**  $\$X, \$Z$  or **FIX**  $\$X, Y, \$Z$  (convert floating to fixed):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow \text{int } f(\$Z)$ .
- **FIXU**  $\$X, \$Z$  or **FIXU**  $\$X, Y, \$Z$  (convert floating to fixed unsigned):  
 $u(\$X) \leftarrow (\text{int } f(\$Z)) \bmod 2^{64}$ .
- **FLOT**  $\$X, \$Z$  or **FLOT**  $\$X, Y, \$Z$  (convert fixed to floating):  $f(\$X) \leftarrow s(\$Z)$ .
- **FLOTU**  $\$X, \$Z$  or **FLOTU**  $\$X, Y, \$Z$  (convert fixed to floating unsigned):  
 $f(\$X) \leftarrow u(\$Z)$ .
- **SFLOT**  $\$X, \$Z$  or **SFLOT**  $\$X, Y, \$Z$  (convert fixed to short float):  
 $f(\$X) \leftarrow f(T) \leftarrow s(\$Z)$ .
- **SFLOTU**  $\$X, \$Z$  or **SFLOTU**  $\$X, Y, \$Z$  (convert fixed to short float unsigned):  
 $f(\$X) \leftarrow f(T) \leftarrow u(\$Z)$ .
- **LDSF**  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  or **LDSF**  $\$X, A$  (load short float):  $f(\$X) \leftarrow f(M_4[A])$ .
- **STSF**  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  or **STSF**  $\$X, A$  (store short float):  $f(M_4[A]) \leftarrow f(\$X)$ .

Assignment to a floating point quantity uses the current rounding mode to determine the appropriate value when an exact value cannot be assigned. Four rounding modes are supported: 1 (**ROUND\_OFF**), 2 (**ROUND\_UP**), 3 (**ROUND\_DOWN**), and 4 (**ROUND\_NEAR**). The *Y* field of **FSQRT**, **FINT**, **FIX**, **FIXU**, **FLOT**, **FLOTU**, **SFLOT**, and **SFLOTU** can be used to specify a rounding mode other than the current one, if desired. For example, **FIX**  $\$X, \text{ROUND\_UP}, \$Z$  sets  $s(\$X) \leftarrow \lceil f(\$Z) \rceil$ . Operations **SFLOT** and **SFLOTU** first round as if storing into an anonymous tetrabyte *T*, then they convert that number to octabyte form.

The ‘**int**’ operation rounds to an integer. The operation  $y \text{ rem } z$  is defined to be  $y - nz$ , where  $n$  is the nearest integer to  $y/z$ , or the nearest *even* integer in case of a tie. Special rules apply when the operands are infinite or NaN, and special conventions govern the sign of a zero result. The values  $+0.0$  and  $-0.0$  have different floating point representations, but **FEQL** calls them equal. All such technicalities are explained in the *MMIXware* document, and Section 4.2 explains why the technicalities are important.

**Immediate constants.** Programs often need to deal with small constant numbers. For example, we might want to add or subtract 1 from a register, or we might want to shift by 32, etc. In such cases it’s a nuisance to load the small constant from memory into another register. So **MMIX** provides a general mechanism by which such constants can be obtained “immediately” from an

instruction itself: *Every instruction we have discussed so far has a variant in which \$Z is replaced by the number Z, unless the instruction treats \$Z as a floating point number.*

For example, 'ADD \$X,\$Y,\$Z' has a counterpart 'ADD \$X,\$Y,Z', meaning  $s(\$X) \leftarrow s(\$Y) + Z$ ; 'SRU \$X,\$Y,\$Z' has a counterpart 'SRU \$X,\$Y,Z', meaning  $u(\$X) \leftarrow \lfloor u(\$Y)/2^Z \rfloor$ ; 'FLOT \$X,\$Z' has a counterpart 'FLOT \$X,Z', meaning  $f(\$X) \leftarrow Z$ . But 'FADD \$X,\$Y,\$Z' has no immediate counterpart.

The opcode for 'ADD \$X,\$Y,\$Z' is #20 and the opcode for 'ADD \$X,\$Y,Z' is #21; we use the same symbol ADD in both cases for simplicity. In general the opcode for the immediate variant of an operation is one greater than the opcode for the register variant.

Several instructions also feature *wyde immediate* constants, which range from #0000 = 0 to #ffff = 65535. These constants, which appear in the YZ bytes, can be shifted into the high, medium high, medium low, or low wyde positions of an octabyte.

- SETH \$X,YZ (set high wyde):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow YZ \times 2^{48}$ .
- SETMH \$X,YZ (set medium high wyde):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow YZ \times 2^{32}$ .
- SETML \$X,YZ (set medium low wyde):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow YZ \times 2^{16}$ .
- SETL \$X,YZ (set low wyde):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow YZ$ .
- INCH \$X,YZ (increase by high wyde):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow (u(\$X) + YZ \times 2^{48}) \bmod 2^{64}$ .
- INCMH \$X,YZ (increase by medium high wyde):  
 $u(\$X) \leftarrow (u(\$X) + YZ \times 2^{32}) \bmod 2^{64}$ .
- INCML \$X,YZ (increase by medium low wyde):  
 $u(\$X) \leftarrow (u(\$X) + YZ \times 2^{16}) \bmod 2^{64}$ .
- INCL \$X,YZ (increase by low wyde):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow (u(\$X) + YZ) \bmod 2^{64}$ .
- ORH \$X,YZ (bitwise or with high wyde):  $v(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$X) \vee v(YZ \ll 48)$ .
- ORMH \$X,YZ (bitwise or with medium high wyde):  
 $v(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$X) \vee v(YZ \ll 32)$ .
- ORML \$X,YZ (bitwise or with medium low wyde):  
 $v(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$X) \vee v(YZ \ll 16)$ .
- ORL \$X,YZ (bitwise or with low wyde):  $v(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$X) \vee v(YZ)$ .
- ANDNH \$X,YZ (bitwise and-not high wyde):  $v(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$X) \wedge \bar{v}(YZ \ll 48)$ .
- ANDNMH \$X,YZ (bitwise and-not medium high wyde):  
 $v(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$X) \wedge \bar{v}(YZ \ll 32)$ .
- ANDNML \$X,YZ (bitwise and-not medium low wyde):  
 $v(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$X) \wedge \bar{v}(YZ \ll 16)$ .
- ANDNL \$X,YZ (bitwise and-not low wyde):  $v(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$X) \wedge \bar{v}(YZ)$ .

Using at most four of these instructions, we can get any desired octabyte into a register without loading anything from the memory. For example, the commands

SETH \$0,#0123; INCMH \$0,#4567; INCML \$0,#89ab; INCL \$0,#cdef

put #0123456789abcdef into register \$0.

The MMIX assembly language allows us to write SET as an abbreviation for SETL, and SET \$X,\$Y as an abbreviation for the common operation OR \$X,\$Y,0.

**Jumps and branches.** Instructions are normally executed in their natural sequence. In other words, the command that is performed after MMIX has obeyed the tetrabyte in memory location @ is normally the tetrabyte found in memory location @ + 4. (The symbol @ denotes the place where we're "at.") But jump and branch instructions allow this sequence to be interrupted.

- **JMP RA** (jump):  $@ \leftarrow \text{RA}$ .

Here RA denotes a three-byte *relative address*, which could be written more explicitly as  $@+4*XYZ$ , namely XYZ tetrabytes following the current location @. For example, 'JMP @+4\*2' is a symbolic form for the tetrabyte #f0000002; if this instruction appears in location #1000, the next instruction to be executed will be the one in location #1008. We might in fact write 'JMP #1008'; but then the value of XYZ would depend on the location jumped from.

Relative offsets can also be negative, in which case the opcode increases by 1 and XYZ is the offset plus  $2^{24}$ . For example, 'JMP @-4\*2' is the tetrabyte #f1fffffe. Opcode #f0 tells the computer to "jump forward" and opcode #f1 tells it to "jump backward," but we write both as JMP. In fact, we usually write simply 'JMP Addr' when we want to jump to location Addr, and the MMIX assembly program figures out the appropriate opcode and the appropriate value of XYZ. Such a jump will be possible unless we try to stray more than about 67 million bytes from our present location.

- **GO \$X,\$Y,\$Z** (go):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow @ + 4$ , then  $@ \leftarrow A$ .

The GO instruction allows us to jump to an *absolute address*, anywhere in memory; this address A is calculated by formula (5), exactly as in the load and store commands. Before going to the specified address, the location of the instruction that would ordinarily have come next is placed into register \$X. Therefore we could return to that location later by saying, for example, 'GO \$X,\$X,0', with  $Z = 0$  as an immediate constant.

- **BN \$X,RA** (branch if negative): if  $s(\$X) < 0$ , set  $@ \leftarrow \text{RA}$ .
- **BZ \$X,RA** (branch if zero): if  $\$X = 0$ , set  $@ \leftarrow \text{RA}$ .
- **BP \$X,RA** (branch if positive): if  $s(\$X) > 0$ , set  $@ \leftarrow \text{RA}$ .
- **BOD \$X,RA** (branch if odd): if  $s(\$X) \bmod 2 = 1$ , set  $@ \leftarrow \text{RA}$ .
- **BNN \$X,RA** (branch if nonnegative): if  $s(\$X) \geq 0$ , set  $@ \leftarrow \text{RA}$ .
- **BNZ \$X,RA** (branch if nonzero): if  $\$X \neq 0$ , set  $@ \leftarrow \text{RA}$ .
- **BNP \$X,RA** (branch if nonpositive): if  $s(\$X) \leq 0$ , set  $@ \leftarrow \text{RA}$ .
- **BEV \$X,RA** (branch if even): if  $s(\$X) \bmod 2 = 0$ , set  $@ \leftarrow \text{RA}$ .

A *branch* instruction is a conditional jump that depends on the contents of register \$X. The range of destination addresses RA is more limited than it was with JMP, because only two bytes are available to express the relative offset; but still we can branch to any tetrabyte between  $@ - 2^{18}$  and  $@ + 2^{18} - 4$ .

- **PBN \$X,RA** (probable branch if negative): if  $s(\$X) < 0$ , set  $@ \leftarrow \text{RA}$ .
- **PBZ \$X,RA** (probable branch if zero): if  $\$X = 0$ , set  $@ \leftarrow \text{RA}$ .
- **PBP \$X,RA** (probable branch if positive): if  $s(\$X) > 0$ , set  $@ \leftarrow \text{RA}$ .
- **PBOD \$X,RA** (probable branch if odd): if  $s(\$X) \bmod 2 = 1$ , set  $@ \leftarrow \text{RA}$ .
- **PBNN \$X,RA** (probable branch if nonnegative): if  $s(\$X) \geq 0$ , set  $@ \leftarrow \text{RA}$ .

- PBNZ  $\$X, RA$  (probable branch if nonzero): if  $\$X \neq 0$ , set  $@ \leftarrow RA$ .
- PBNP  $\$X, RA$  (probable branch if nonpositive): if  $s(\$X) \leq 0$ , set  $@ \leftarrow RA$ .
- PBEV  $\$X, RA$  (probable branch if even): if  $s(\$X) \bmod 2 = 0$ , set  $@ \leftarrow RA$ .

High-speed computers usually work fastest if they can anticipate when a branch will be taken, because foreknowledge helps them look ahead and get ready for future instructions. Therefore MMIX encourages programmers to give hints about whether branching is likely or not. Whenever a branch is expected to be taken more than half of the time, a wise programmer will say PB instead of B.

**\*Subroutine calls.** MMIX also has several instructions that facilitate efficient communication between subprograms, via a *register stack*. The details are somewhat technical and we will defer them until Section 1.4'; an informal description will suffice here. Short programs do not need to use these features.

- PUSHJ  $\$X, RA$  (push registers and jump): push(X) and set  $rJ \leftarrow @ + 4$ , then set  $@ \leftarrow RA$ .
- PUSHGO  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  (push registers and go): push(X) and set  $rJ \leftarrow @ + 4$ , then set  $@ \leftarrow A$ .

The special *return-jump register*  $rJ$  is set to the address of the tetrabyte following the PUSH command. The action “push(X)” means, roughly speaking, that local registers  $\$0$  through  $\$X$  are saved and made temporarily inaccessible. What used to be  $\$(X+1)$  is now  $\$0$ , what used to be  $\$(X+2)$  is now  $\$1$ , etc. But all registers  $\$k$  for  $k \geq rG$  remain unchanged;  $rG$  is the special *global threshold register*, whose value always lies between 32 and 255, inclusive.

Register  $\$k$  is called *global* if  $k \geq rG$ . It is called *local* if  $k < rL$ ; here  $rL$  is the special *local threshold register*, which tells how many local registers are currently active. Otherwise, namely if  $rL \leq k < rG$ , register  $\$k$  is called *marginal*, and  $\$k$  is equal to zero whenever it is used as a source operand in a command. If a marginal register  $\$k$  is used as a destination operand in a command,  $rL$  is automatically increased to  $k + 1$  before the command is performed, thereby making  $\$k$  local.

- POP  $X, YZ$  (pop registers and return): pop(X), then  $@ \leftarrow rJ + 4 * YZ$ .

Here “pop(X)” means, roughly speaking, that all but X of the current local registers become marginal, and then the local registers hidden by the most recent “push” that has not yet been “popped” are restored to their former values. Full details appear in Section 1.4', together with numerous examples.

- SAVE  $\$X, 0$  (save process state):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow \text{context}$ .
- UNSAVE  $\$Z$  (restore process state):  $\text{context} \leftarrow u(\$Z)$ .

The SAVE instruction stores all current registers in memory at the top of the register stack, and puts the address of the topmost stored octabyte into  $u(\$X)$ . Register  $\$X$  must be global; that is, X must be  $\geq rG$ . All of the currently local and global registers are saved, together with special registers like  $rA$ ,  $rD$ ,  $rE$ ,  $rG$ ,  $rH$ ,  $rJ$ ,  $rM$ ,  $rR$ , and several others that we have not yet discussed. The UNSAVE instruction takes the address of such a topmost octabyte and restores the associated context, essentially undoing a previous SAVE. The value of  $rL$  is set to zero by SAVE, but restored by UNSAVE. MMIX has special registers called

the *register stack offset* (rO) and *register stack pointer* (rS), which control the PUSH, POP, SAVE, and UNSAVE operations. (Again, full details can be found in Section 1.4'.)

**\*System considerations.** Several opcodes, intended primarily for ultrafast and/or parallel versions of the MMIX architecture, are of interest only to advanced users, but we should at least mention them here. Some of the associated operations are similar to the “probable branch” commands, in the sense that they give hints to the machine about how to plan ahead for maximum efficiency. Most programmers do not need to use these instructions, except perhaps SYNCID.

- LDUNC \$X,\$Y,\$Z (load octa uncached):  $s(\$X) \leftarrow s(M_8[A])$ .
- STUNC \$X,\$Y,\$Z (store octa uncached):  $s(M_8[A]) \leftarrow s(\$X)$ .

These commands perform the same operations as LDO and STO, but they also inform the machine that the loaded or stored octabyte and its near neighbors will probably not be read or written in the near future.

- PRELD X,\$Y,\$Z (preload data).

Says that many of the bytes  $M[A]$  through  $M[A + X]$  will probably be loaded or stored in the near future.

- PREST X,\$Y,\$Z (prestore data).

Says that all of the bytes  $M[A]$  through  $M[A + X]$  will definitely be written (stored) before they are next read (loaded).

- PREGO X,\$Y,\$Z (prefetch to go).

Says that many of the bytes  $M[A]$  through  $M[A + X]$  will probably be used as instructions in the near future.

- SYNCID X,\$Y,\$Z (synchronize instructions and data).

Says that all of the bytes  $M[A]$  through  $M[A + X]$  must be fetched again before being interpreted as instructions. *MMIX is allowed to assume that a program's instructions do not change after the program has begun*, unless the instructions have been prepared by SYNCID. (See exercise 57.)

- SYNCD X,\$Y,\$Z (synchronize data).

Says that all of bytes  $M[A]$  through  $M[A + X]$  must be brought up to date in the physical memory, so that other computers and input/output devices can read them.

- SYNC XYZ (synchronize).

Restricts parallel activities so that different processors can cooperate reliably; see *MMIXware* for details. XYZ must be 0, 1, 2, or 3.

- CSWAP \$X,\$Y,\$Z (compare and swap octabytes).

If  $u(M_8[A]) = u(rP)$ , where  $rP$  is the special *prediction register*, set  $u(M_8[A]) \leftarrow u(\$X)$  and  $u(\$X) \leftarrow 1$ . Otherwise set  $u(rP) \leftarrow u(M_8[A])$  and  $u(\$X) \leftarrow 0$ . This is an atomic (indivisible) operation, useful when independent computers share a common memory.

- LDVTS \$X,\$Y,\$Z (load virtual translation status).

This instruction, described in *MMIXware*, is for the operating system only.

**\*Interrupts.** The normal flow of instructions from one tetrabyte to the next can be changed not only by jumps and branches but also by less predictable events like overflow or external signals. Real-world machines must also cope with such things as security violations and hardware failures. MMIX distinguishes two kinds of program interruptions: “trips” and “traps.” A trip sends control to a *trip handler*, which is part of the user’s program; a trap sends control to a *trap handler*, which is part of the operating system.

Eight kinds of exceptional conditions can arise when MMIX is doing arithmetic, namely integer divide check (D), integer overflow (V), float-to-fix overflow (W), invalid floating operation (I), floating overflow (O), floating underflow (U), floating division by zero (Z), and floating inexact (X). The special *arithmetic status register* rA holds current information about all these exceptions. The eight bits of its rightmost byte are called its *event bits*, and they are named D\_BIT (#80), V\_BIT (#40), ..., X\_BIT (#01), in order DVWIOUZX.

The eight bits just to the left of the event bits in rA are called the *enable bits*; they appear in the same order DVWIOUZX. When an exceptional condition occurs during some arithmetic operation, MMIX looks at the corresponding enable bit before proceeding to the next instruction. If the enable bit is 0, the corresponding event bit is set to 1; otherwise the machine invokes a trip handler by “tripping” to location #10 for exception D, #20 for exception V, ..., #80 for exception X. Thus the event bits of rA record the exceptions that have not caused trips. (If more than one enabled exception occurs, the leftmost one takes precedence. For example, simultaneous O and X is handled by O.)

The two bits of rA just to the left of the enable bits hold the current rounding mode, mod 4. The other 46 bits of rA should be zero. A program can change the setting of rA at any time, using the PUT command discussed below.

- TRIP X,Y,Z or TRIP X,YZ or TRIP XYZ (trip).

This command forces a trip to the handler at location #00.

Whenever a trip occurs, MMIX uses five special registers to record the current state: the *bootstrap register* rB, the *where-interrupted register* rW, the *execution register* rX, the *Y operand register* rY, and the *Z operand register* rZ. First rB is set to \$255, then \$255 is set to rJ, and rW is set to @ + 4. The left half of rX is set to #80000000, and the right half is set to the instruction that tripped. If the interrupted instruction was not a store command, rY is set to \$Y and rZ is set to \$Z (or to Z in case of an immediate constant); otherwise rY is set to A (the memory address of the store command) and rZ is set to \$X (the quantity to be stored). Finally control passes to the handler by setting @ to the handler address (#00 or #10 or ... or #80).

- TRAP X,Y,Z or TRAP X,YZ or TRAP XYZ (trap).

This command is analogous to TRIP, but it forces a trap to the operating system. Special registers rBB, rWW, rXX, rYY, and rZZ take the place of rB, rW, rX, rY, and rZ; the special *trap address register* rT supplies the address of the trap handler, which is placed in @. Section 1.3.2' describes several TRAP commands that provide simple input/output operations. The normal way to conclude a

program is to say ‘TRAP 0’; this instruction is the tetrabyte #00000000, so you might run into it by mistake.

The *MMIXware* document gives further details about external interrupts, which are governed by the special *interrupt mask register* rK and *interrupt request register* rQ. Dynamic traps, which arise when  $rK \wedge rQ \neq 0$ , are handled at address rTT instead of rT.

- **RESUME 0** (resume after interrupt).

If  $s(rX)$  is negative, MMIX simply sets  $@ \leftarrow rW$  and takes its next instruction from there. Otherwise, if the leading byte of rX is zero, MMIX sets  $@ \leftarrow rW - 4$  and executes the instruction in the lower half of rX as if it had appeared in that location. (This feature can be used even if no interrupt has occurred. The inserted instruction must not itself be **RESUME**.) Otherwise MMIX performs special actions described in the *MMIXware* document and of interest primarily to the operating system; see exercise 1.4.3'–14.

**The complete instruction set.** Table 1 shows the symbolic names of all 256 opcodes, arranged by their numeric values in hexadecimal notation. For example, **ADD** appears in the upper half of the row labeled #2x and in the column labeled #0 at the top, so **ADD** is opcode #20; **ORL** appears in the lower half of the row labeled #Ex and in the column labeled #B at the bottom, so **ORL** is opcode #EB.

Table 1 actually says ‘**ADD[I]**’, not ‘**ADD**’, because the symbol **ADD** really stands for two opcodes. Opcode #20 arises from **ADD \$X,\$Y,\$Z** using register \$Z, while opcode #21 arises from **ADD \$X,\$Y,Z** using the immediate constant Z. When a distinction is necessary, we say that opcode #20 is **ADD** and opcode #21 is **ADDI** (“add immediate”); similarly, #F0 is **JMP** and #F1 is **JMPB** (“jump backward”). This gives every opcode a unique name. However, the extra I and B are generally dropped for convenience when we write MMIX programs.

We have discussed nearly all of MMIX’s opcodes. Two of the stragglers are

- **GET \$X,Z** (get from special register):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow u(g[Z])$ , where  $0 \leq Z < 32$ .
- **PUT X,\$Z** (put into special register):  $u(g[X]) \leftarrow u(\$Z)$ , where  $0 \leq X < 32$ .

Each special register has a code number between 0 and 31. We speak of registers rA, rB, ..., as aids to human understanding; but register rA is really g[21] from the machine’s point of view, and register rB is really g[0], etc. The code numbers appear in Table 2 on page 21.

**GET** commands are unrestricted, but certain things cannot be **PUT**: No value can be put into rG that is greater than 255, less than 32, or less than the current setting of rL. No value can be put into rA that is greater than #3ffff. If a program tries to increase rL with the **PUT** command, rL will stay unchanged. Moreover, a program cannot **PUT** anything into rC, rN, rO, rS, rI, rT, rTT, rK, rQ, rU, or rV; these “extraspecial” registers have code numbers in the range 8–18.

Most of the special registers have already been mentioned in connection with specific instructions, but MMIX also has a “clock register” or *cycle counter*, rC, which keeps advancing; an *interval counter*, rI, which keeps decreasing, and which requests an interrupt when it reaches zero; a *serial number register*, rN, which gives each MMIX machine a unique number; a *usage counter*, rU, which



**Table 1**  
THE OPCODES OF MMIX

	#0	#1	#2	#3	#4	#5	#6	#7	
#0x	TRAP $5v$	FCMP $v$	FUN $v$	FEQL $v$	FADD $4v$	FIX $4v$	FSUB $4v$	FIXU $4v$	#0x
	FLOT[I] $4v$		FLOTU[I] $4v$		SFLOT[I] $4v$		SFLOTU[I] $4v$		
#1x	FMUL $4v$	FCMPE $4v$	FUNE $v$	FEQLE $4v$	FDIV $40v$	FSQRT $40v$	FREM $4v$	FINT $4v$	#1x
	MUL[I] $10v$		MULU[I] $10v$		DIV[I] $60v$		DIVU[I] $60v$		
#2x	ADD[I] $v$		ADDU[I] $v$		SUB[I] $v$		SUBU[I] $v$		#2x
	2ADDU[I] $v$		4ADDU[I] $v$		8ADDU[I] $v$		16ADDU[I] $v$		
#3x	CMP[I] $v$		CMPU[I] $v$		NEG[I] $v$		NEGU[I] $v$		#3x
	SL[I] $v$		SLU[I] $v$		SR[I] $v$		SRU[I] $v$		
#4x	BN[B] $v+\pi$		BZ[B] $v+\pi$		BP[B] $v+\pi$		BOD[B] $v+\pi$		#4x
	BNN[B] $v+\pi$		BNZ[B] $v+\pi$		BNP[B] $v+\pi$		BEV[B] $v+\pi$		
#5x	PBN[B] $3v-\pi$		PBZ[B] $3v-\pi$		PBP[B] $3v-\pi$		PBOD[B] $3v-\pi$		#5x
	PBNN[B] $3v-\pi$		PBNZ[B] $3v-\pi$		PBNP[B] $3v-\pi$		PBEV[B] $3v-\pi$		
#6x	CSN[I] $v$		CSZ[I] $v$		CSP[I] $v$		CSOD[I] $v$		#6x
	CSNN[I] $v$		CSNZ[I] $v$		CSNP[I] $v$		CSEV[I] $v$		
#7x	ZSN[I] $v$		ZSZ[I] $v$		ZSP[I] $v$		ZSOD[I] $v$		#7x
	ZSNN[I] $v$		ZSNZ[I] $v$		ZSNP[I] $v$		ZSEV[I] $v$		
#8x	LDB[I] $\mu+v$		LDBU[I] $\mu+v$		LDW[I] $\mu+v$		LDWU[I] $\mu+v$		#8x
	LDT[I] $\mu+v$		LDTU[I] $\mu+v$		LDO[I] $\mu+v$		LDOU[I] $\mu+v$		
#9x	LDSF[I] $\mu+v$		LDHT[I] $\mu+v$		CSWAP[I] $2\mu+2v$		LDUNC[I] $\mu+v$		#9x
	LDVTS[I] $v$		PRELD[I] $v$		PREGO[I] $v$		GO[I] $3v$		
#Ax	STB[I] $\mu+v$		STBU[I] $\mu+v$		STW[I] $\mu+v$		STWU[I] $\mu+v$		#Ax
	STT[I] $\mu+v$		STTU[I] $\mu+v$		STO[I] $\mu+v$		STOU[I] $\mu+v$		
#Bx	STSF[I] $\mu+v$		STHT[I] $\mu+v$		STCO[I] $\mu+v$		STUNC[I] $\mu+v$		#Bx
	SYNCD[I] $v$		PREST[I] $v$		SYNCID[I] $v$		PUSHGO[I] $3v$		
#Cx	OR[I] $v$		ORN[I] $v$		NOR[I] $v$		XOR[I] $v$		#Cx
	AND[I] $v$		ANDN[I] $v$		NAND[I] $v$		NXOR[I] $v$		
#Dx	BDIF[I] $v$		WDIF[I] $v$		TDIF[I] $v$		ODIF[I] $v$		#Dx
	MUX[I] $v$		SADD[I] $v$		MOR[I] $v$		MXOR[I] $v$		
#Ex	SETH $v$	SETMH $v$	SETML $v$	SETL $v$	INCH $v$	INCMH $v$	INCML $v$	INCL $v$	#Ex
	ORH $v$	ORMH $v$	ORML $v$	ORL $v$	ANDNH $v$	ANDNMH $v$	ANDNML $v$	ANDNL $v$	
#Fx	JMP[B] $v$		PUSHJ[B] $v$		GETA[B] $v$		PUT[I] $v$		#Fx
	POP $3v$	RESUME $5v$	[UN]SAVE $20\mu+v$		SYNC $v$	SWYM $v$	GET $v$	TRIP $5v$	
	#8	#9	#A	#B	#C	#D	#E	#F	

$\pi = 2v$  if the branch is taken,  $\pi = 0$  if the branch is not taken

increases by 1 whenever specified opcodes are executed; and a *virtual translation register*,  $rV$ , which defines a mapping from the “virtual” 64-bit addresses used in programs to the “actual” physical locations of installed memory. These special registers help make MMIX a complete, viable machine that could actually be built and run successfully; but they are not of importance to us in this book. The *MMIXware* document explains them fully.

- GETA  $\$X, RA$  (get address):  $u(\$X) \leftarrow RA$ .

This instruction loads a relative address into register  $\$X$ , using the same conventions as the relative addresses in branch commands. For example, GETA  $\$0, @$  will set  $\$0$  to the address of the instruction itself.

**Table 2**  
SPECIAL REGISTERS OF MMIX

		code	saved?	put?
rA	arithmetic status register . . . . .	21	✓	✓
rB	bootstrap register (trip) . . . . .	0	✓	✓
rC	cycle counter . . . . .	8		
rD	dividend register . . . . .	1	✓	✓
rE	epsilon register . . . . .	2	✓	✓
rF	failure location register . . . . .	22		✓
rG	global threshold register . . . . .	19	✓	✓
rH	himult register . . . . .	3	✓	✓
rI	interval counter . . . . .	12		
rJ	return-jump register . . . . .	4	✓	✓
rK	interrupt mask register . . . . .	15		
rL	local threshold register . . . . .	20	✓	✓
rM	multiplex mask register . . . . .	5	✓	✓
rN	serial number . . . . .	9		
rO	register stack offset . . . . .	10		
rP	prediction register . . . . .	23	✓	✓
rQ	interrupt request register . . . . .	16		
rR	remainder register . . . . .	6	✓	✓
rS	register stack pointer . . . . .	11		
rT	trap address register . . . . .	13		
rU	usage counter . . . . .	17		
rV	virtual translation register . . . . .	18		
rW	where-interrupted register (trip) . . . . .	24	✓	✓
rX	execution register (trip) . . . . .	25	✓	✓
rY	Y operand (trip) . . . . .	26	✓	✓
rZ	Z operand (trip) . . . . .	27	✓	✓
rBB	bootstrap register (trap) . . . . .	7		✓
rTT	dynamic trap address register . . . . .	14		
rWW	where-interrupted register (trap) . . . . .	28		✓
rXX	execution register (trap) . . . . .	29		✓
rYY	Y operand (trap) . . . . .	30		✓
rZZ	Z operand (trap) . . . . .	31		✓

- SWYM X, Y, Z or SWYM X, YZ or SWYM XYZ (sympathize with your machinery).

The last of MMIX's 256 opcodes is, fortunately, the simplest of all. In fact, it is often called a no-op, because it performs no operation. It does, however, keep the machine running smoothly, just as real-world swimming helps to keep programmers healthy. Bytes X, Y, and Z are ignored.

**Timing.** In later parts of this book we will often want to compare different MMIX programs to see which is faster. Such comparisons aren't easy to make, in general, because the MMIX architecture can be implemented in many different ways. Although MMIX is a mythical machine, its mythical hardware exists in cheap, slow versions as well as in costly high-performance models. The running time of a program depends not only on the clock rate but also on the number of

functional units that can be active simultaneously and the degree to which they are pipelined; it depends on the techniques used to prefetch instructions before they are executed; it depends on the size of the random-access memory that is used to give the illusion of  $2^{64}$  virtual bytes; and it depends on the sizes and allocation strategies of caches and other buffers, etc., etc.

For practical purposes, the running time of an MMIX program can often be estimated satisfactorily by assigning a fixed cost to each operation, based on the approximate running time that would be obtained on a high-performance machine with lots of main memory; so that's what we will do. Each operation will be assumed to take an integer number of  $v$ , where  $v$  (pronounced "oops")\* is a unit that represents the clock cycle time in a pipelined implementation. Although the value of  $v$  decreases as technology improves, we always keep up with the latest advances because we measure time in units of  $v$ , not in nanoseconds. The running time in our estimates will also be assumed to depend on the number of memory references or *mems* that a program uses; this is the number of load and store instructions. For example, we will assume that each LDO (load octa) instruction costs  $\mu + v$ , where  $\mu$  is the average cost of a memory reference. The total running time of a program might be reported as, say,  $35\mu + 1000v$ , meaning "35 mems plus 1000 oops." The ratio  $\mu/v$  has been increasing steadily for many years; nobody knows for sure whether this trend will continue, but experience has shown that  $\mu$  and  $v$  deserve to be considered independently.

Table 1, which is repeated also in the endpapers of this book, displays the assumed running time together with each opcode. Notice that most instructions take just  $1v$ , while loads and stores take  $\mu + v$ . A branch or probable branch takes  $1v$  if predicted correctly,  $3v$  if predicted incorrectly. Floating point operations usually take  $4v$  each, although FDIV and FSQRT cost  $40v$ . Integer multiplication takes  $10v$ ; integer division weighs in at  $60v$ .

Even though we will often use the assumptions of Table 1 for seat-of-the-pants estimates of running time, we must remember that the actual running time might be quite sensitive to the ordering of instructions. For example, integer division might cost only one cycle if we can find 60 other things to do between the time we issue the command and the time we need the result. Several LDB (load byte) instructions might need to reference memory only once, if they refer to the same octabyte. Yet the result of a load command is usually not ready for use in the immediately following instruction. Experience has shown that some algorithms work well with cache memory, and others do not; therefore  $\mu$  is not really constant. Even the location of instructions in memory can have a significant effect on performance, because some instructions can be fetched together with others. Therefore the MMIXware package includes not only a simple simulator, which calculates running times by the rules of Table 1, but also a comprehensive *meta-simulator*, which runs MMIX programs under a wide range of different technological assumptions. Users of the meta-simulator can specify the

---

\* The Greek letter upsilon ( $v$ ) is wider than an italic letter vee ( $v$ ), but the author admits that this distinction is rather subtle. Readers who prefer to say vee instead of oops are free to do as they wish. The symbol is, however, an upsilon.

characteristics of the memory bus and the parameters of such things as caches for instructions and data, virtual address translation, pipelining and simultaneous instruction issue, branch prediction, etc. Given a configuration file and a program file, the meta-simulator determines precisely how long the specified hardware would need to run the program. Only the meta-simulator can be trusted to give reliable information about a program's actual behavior in practice; but such results can be difficult to interpret, because infinitely many configurations are possible. That's why we often resort to the much simpler estimates of Table 1.

*No benchmark result should ever be taken at face value.*

— BRIAN KERNIGHAN and CHRISTOPHER VAN WYK (1998)

**MMIX versus reality.** A person who understands the rudiments of MMIX programming has a pretty good idea of what today's general-purpose computers can do easily; MMIX is very much like all of them. But MMIX has been idealized in several ways, partly because the author has tried to design a machine that is somewhat "ahead of its time" so that it won't become obsolete too quickly. Therefore a brief comparison between MMIX and the computers actually being built at the turn of the millennium is appropriate. The main differences between MMIX and those machines are:

- Commercial machines do not ignore the low-order bits of memory addresses, as MMIX does when accessing  $M_8[A]$ ; they usually insist that  $A$  be a multiple of 8. (We will find many uses for those precious low-order bits.)
- Commercial machines are usually deficient in their support of integer arithmetic. For example, they almost never produce the true quotient  $\lfloor x/y \rfloor$  and true remainder  $x \bmod y$  when  $x$  is negative or  $y$  is negative; they often throw away the upper half of a product. They don't treat left and right shifts as strict equivalents of multiplication and division by powers of 2. Sometimes they do not implement division in hardware at all; and when they do handle division, they usually assume that the upper half of the 128-bit dividend is zero. Such restrictions make high-precision calculations more difficult.
- Commercial machines do not perform **FINT** and **FREM** efficiently.
- Commercial machines do not (yet?) have the powerful **MOR** and **MXOR** operations. They usually have a half dozen or so ad hoc instructions that handle only the most common special cases of **MOR**.
- Commercial machines rarely have more than 64 general-purpose registers. The 256 registers of MMIX significantly decrease program length, because many variables and constants of a program can live entirely in those registers instead of in memory. Furthermore, MMIX's register stack is more flexible than the comparable mechanisms in existing computers.

All of these pluses for MMIX have associated minuses, because computer design always involves tradeoffs. The primary design goal for MMIX was to keep the machine as simple and clean and consistent and forward-looking as possible, without sacrificing speed and realism too greatly.

*And now I see with eye serene  
The very pulse of the machine.*

— WILLIAM WORDSWORTH, *She Was a Phantom of Delight* (1804)

**Summary.** MMIX is a programmer-friendly computer that operates on 64-bit quantities called octabytes. It has the general characteristics of a so-called RISC (“reduced instruction set computer”); that is, its instructions have only a few different formats (OP X, Y, Z or OP X, YZ or OP XYZ), and each instruction either transfers data between memory and a register or involves only registers. Table 1 summarizes the 256 opcodes and their default running times; Table 2 summarizes the special registers that are sometimes important.

The following exercises give a quick review of the material in this section. Most of them are quite simple, and the reader should try to do nearly all of them.

### EXERCISES

1. [00] The binary form of 2009 is  $(11111011001)_2$ ; what is 2009 in hexadecimal?
2. [05] Which of the letters  $\{A, B, C, D, E, F, a, b, c, d, e, f\}$  are *odd* when considered as (a) hexadecimal digits? (b) ASCII characters?
3. [10] Four-bit quantities — half-bytes, or hexadecimal digits — are often called *nybbles*. Suggest a good name for *two-bit* quantities, so that we have a complete binary nomenclature ranging from bits to octabytes.
4. [15] A kilobyte (kB or KB) is 1000 bytes, and a megabyte (MB) is 1000 kB. What are the official names and abbreviations for larger numbers of bytes?
5. [M13] If  $\alpha$  is any string of 0s and 1s, let  $s(\alpha)$  and  $u(\alpha)$  be the integers that it represents when regarded as a signed or unsigned binary number. Prove that, if  $x$  is any integer, we have

$$x = s(\alpha) \quad \text{if and only if} \quad x \equiv u(\alpha) \pmod{2^n} \quad \text{and} \quad -2^{n-1} \leq x < 2^{n-1},$$

where  $n$  is the length of  $\alpha$ .

- 6. [M20] Prove or disprove the following rule for negating an  $n$ -bit number in two’s complement notation: “Complement all the bits, then add 1.” (For example,  $\#0\dots01$  becomes  $\#f\dots fe$ , then  $\#f\dots ff$ ; also  $\#f\dots ff$  becomes  $\#0\dots00$ , then  $\#0\dots01$ .)
7. [M15] Could the formal definitions of LDHT and STHT have been stated as

$$s(\$X) \leftarrow s(M_4[A]) \times 2^{32} \quad \text{and} \quad s(M_4[A]) \leftarrow \lfloor s(\$X)/2^{32} \rfloor,$$

thus treating the numbers as signed rather than unsigned?

8. [10] If registers  $\$Y$  and  $\$Z$  represent numbers between 0 and 1 in which the binary radix point is assumed to be at the left of each register, (7) illustrates the fact that MULU forms a product in which the assumed radix point appears at the left of register rH. Suppose, on the other hand, that  $\$Z$  is an integer, with the radix point assumed at its right, while  $\$Y$  is a fraction between 0 and 1 as before. Where does the radix point lie after MULU in such a case?

9. [M10] Does the equation  $s(\$Y) = s(\$X) \cdot s(\$Z) + s(rR)$  always hold after the instruction DIV  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  has been performed?

10. [M16] Give an example of DIV in which overflow occurs.
11. [M16] True or false: (a) Both MUL  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  and MULU  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  produce the same result in  $\$X$ . (b) If register  $rD$  is zero, both DIV  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  and DIVU  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  produce the same result in  $\$X$ .
- 12. [M20] Although ADDU  $\$X, \$Y, \$Z$  never signals overflow, we might want to know if a carry occurs at the left when adding  $\$Y$  to  $\$Z$ . Show that the carry can be computed with two further instructions.
13. [M21] Suppose MMIX had no ADD command, only its unsigned counterpart ADDU. How could a programmer tell whether overflow occurred when computing  $s(\$Y) + s(\$Z)$ ?
14. [M21] Suppose MMIX had no SUB command, only its unsigned counterpart SUBU. How could a programmer tell whether overflow occurred when computing  $s(\$Y) - s(\$Z)$ ?
15. [M25] The product of two signed octabytes always lies between  $-2^{126}$  and  $2^{126}$ , so it can always be expressed as a signed 16-byte quantity. Explain how to calculate the upper half of such a signed product.
16. [M23] Suppose MMIX had no MUL command, only its unsigned counterpart MULU. How could a programmer tell whether overflow occurred when computing  $s(\$Y) \times s(\$Z)$ ?
- 17. [M22] Prove that unsigned integer division by 3 can always be done by multiplication: If register  $\$Y$  contains any unsigned integer  $y$ , and if register  $\$1$  contains the constant  $\#aaaaaaaaaaab$ , then the sequence

MULU  $\$0, \$Y, \$1$ ; GET  $\$0, rH$ ; SRU  $\$X, \$0, 1$

puts  $\lfloor y/3 \rfloor$  into register  $\$X$ .

18. [M23] Continuing the previous exercise, prove or disprove that the instructions

MULU  $\$0, \$Y, \$1$ ; GET  $\$0, rH$ ; SRU  $\$X, \$0, 2$

put  $\lfloor y/5 \rfloor$  in  $\$X$  if  $\$1$  is an appropriate constant.

- 19. [M26] Continuing exercises 17 and 18, prove or disprove the following statement: Unsigned integer division by a constant can always be done using “high multiplication” followed by a right shift. More precisely, if  $2^e < z < 2^{e+1}$  we can compute  $\lfloor y/z \rfloor$  by computing  $\lfloor ay/2^{64+e} \rfloor$ , where  $a = \lceil 2^{64+e}/z \rceil$ , for  $0 \leq y < 2^{64}$ .
20. [16] Show that two cleverly chosen MMIX instructions will multiply by 25 faster than the single instruction MUL  $\$X, \$Y, 25$ , if we assume that overflow will not occur.
21. [15] Describe the effects of SL, SLU, SR, and SRU when the unsigned value in register  $\$Z$  is 64 or more.
- 22. [15] Mr. B. C. Dull wrote a program in which he wanted to branch to location **Case1** if the signed number in register  $\$1$  was less than the signed number in register  $\$2$ . His solution was to write ‘SUB  $\$0, \$1, \$2$ ; BN  $\$0, \text{Case1}$ ’.
- What terrible mistake did he make? What should he have written instead?
- 23. [10] Continuing the previous exercise, what should Dull have written if his problem had been to branch if  $s(\$1)$  was *less than or equal to*  $s(\$2)$ ?
24. [M10] If we represent a subset  $S$  of  $\{0, 1, \dots, 63\}$  by the bit vector

$$([0 \in S], [1 \in S], \dots, [63 \in S]),$$

the bitwise operations  $\wedge$  and  $\vee$  correspond respectively to set intersection  $(S \cap T)$  and set union  $(S \cup T)$ . Which bitwise operation corresponds to set difference  $(S \setminus T)$ ?

25. [10] The *Hamming distance* between two bit vectors is the number of positions in which they differ. Show that two MMIX instructions suffice to set register \$X equal to the Hamming distance between  $v(\$Y)$  and  $v(\$Z)$ .

26. [10] What's a good way to compute 64 bit differences,  $v(\$X) \leftarrow v(\$Y) \dot{-} v(\$Z)$ ?

► 27. [20] Show how to use BDIF to compute the *maximum* and *minimum* of eight bytes at a time:  $b(\$X) \leftarrow \max(b(\$Y), b(\$Z))$ ,  $b(\$W) \leftarrow \min(b(\$Y), b(\$Z))$ .

28. [16] How would you calculate eight *absolute pixel differences*  $|b(\$Y) - b(\$Z)|$  simultaneously?

29. [21] The operation of *saturating addition* on  $n$ -bit pixels is defined by the formula

$$y \dot{+} z = \min(2^n - 1, y + z).$$

Show that a sequence of three MMIX instructions will set  $b(\$X) \leftarrow b(\$Y) \dot{+} b(\$Z)$ .

► 30. [25] Suppose register \$0 contains eight ASCII characters. Find a sequence of three MMIX instructions that counts the number of *blank spaces* among those characters. (You may assume that auxiliary constants have been preloaded into other registers. A blank space is ASCII code #20.)

31. [22] Continuing the previous exercise, show how to count the number of characters in \$0 that have *odd parity* (an odd number of 1 bits).

32. [M20] True or false: If  $C = A \circ B$  then  $C^T = B^T \circ A^T$ . (See (11).)

33. [20] What is the shortest sequence of MMIX instructions that will *cyclically shift* a register eight bits to the right? For example, #9e3779b97f4a7c16 would become #169e3779b97f4a7c.

► 34. [21] Given eight bytes of ASCII characters in \$Z, explain how to convert them to the corresponding eight wyde characters of Unicode, using only two MMIX instructions to place the results in \$X and \$Y. How would you go the other way (back to ASCII)?

► 35. [22] Show that two cleverly chosen MOR instructions will reverse the left-to-right order of all 64 bits in a given register \$Y.

► 36. [20] Using only two instructions, create a mask that has #ff in all byte positions where \$Y differs from \$Z, #00 in all byte positions where \$Y equals \$Z.

► 37. [HM30] (*Finite fields*.) Explain how to use MXOR for arithmetic in a field of 256 elements; each element of the field should be represented by a suitable octabyte.

38. [20] What does the following little program do?

```
SETL $1,0; SR $2,$0,56; ADD $1,$1,$2; SLU $0,$0,8; PBNZ $0,@-4*3.
```

► 39. [20] Which of the following equivalent sequences of code is faster, based on the timing information of Table 1?

a) BN \$0,@+4\*2; ADDU \$1,\$2,\$3 versus ADDU \$4,\$2,\$3; CSNN \$1,\$0,\$4.

b) BN \$0,@+4\*3; SET \$1,\$2; JMP @+4\*2; SET \$1,\$3 versus  
CSNN \$1,\$0,\$2; CSN \$1,\$0,\$3.

c) BN \$0,@+4\*3; ADDU \$1,\$2,\$3; JMP @+4\*2; ADDU \$1,\$4,\$5 versus  
ADDU \$1,\$2,\$3; ADDU \$6,\$4,\$5; CSN \$1,\$0,\$6.

d, e, f) Same as (a), (b), and (c), but with PBN in place of BN.

40. [10] What happens if you GO to an address that is not a multiple of 4?

41. [20] True or false:
- The instructions CSOD  $\$X, \$Y, 0$  and ZSEV  $\$X, \$Y, \$X$  have exactly the same effect.
  - The instructions CMPU  $\$X, \$Y, 0$  and ZSNZ  $\$X, \$Y, 1$  have exactly the same effect.
  - The instructions MOR  $\$X, \$Y, 1$  and AND  $\$X, \$Y, \#ff$  have exactly the same effect.
  - The instructions MXOR  $\$X, \$Y, \#80$  and SR  $\$X, \$Y, 56$  have exactly the same effect.
42. [20] What is the best way to set register \$1 to the *absolute value* of the number in register \$0, if \$0 holds (a) a signed integer? (b) a floating point number?
- 43. [28] Given a nonzero octabyte in \$Z, what is the fastest way to count how many leading and trailing zero bits it has? (For example, `#13fd8124f32434a2` has three leading zeros and one trailing zero.)
- 44. [M25] Suppose you want to emulate 32-bit arithmetic with MMIX. Show that it is easy to add, subtract, multiply, and divide signed tetrabytes, with overflow occurring whenever the result does not lie in the interval  $[-2^{31} \dots 2^{31}]$ .
45. [10] Think of a way to remember the sequence DVWIOUZX.
46. [05] The all-zeros tetrabyte `#00000000` halts a program when it occurs as an MMIX instruction. What does the all-ones tetrabyte `#ffffffff` do?
47. [05] What are the symbolic names of opcodes `#DF` and `#55`?
48. [11] The text points out that opcodes LDO and LDOU perform exactly the same operation, with the same efficiency, regardless of the operand bytes X, Y, and Z. What other pairs of opcodes are equivalent in this sense?
- 49. [22] After the following “number one” program has been executed, what changes to registers and memory have taken place? (For example, what is the final setting of \$1? of rA? of rB?)
- ```

NEG    $1,1
STCO   1,$1,1
CMPU   $1,$1,1
STB    $1,$1,$1
LDOU   $1,$1,$1
INCH   $1,1
16ADDU $1,$1,$1
MULU   $1,$1,$1
PUT    rA,1
STW    $1,$1,1
SADD   $1,$1,1
FLOT   $1,$1
PUT    rB,$1
XOR    $1,$1,1
PBOD   $1,@-4*1
NOR    $1,$1,$1
SR     $1,$1,1
SRU    $1,$1,1 █

```
- 50. [14] What is the execution time of the program in the preceding exercise?
51. [14] Convert the “number one” program of exercise 49 to a sequence of tetrabytes in hexadecimal notation.
52. [22] For each MMIX opcode, consider whether there is a way to set the X, Y, and Z bytes so that the result of the instruction is precisely equivalent to SWYM (except that



the execution time may be longer). Assume that nothing is known about the contents of any registers or any memory locations. Whenever it is possible to produce a no-op, state how it can be done. *Examples:* INCL is a no-op if  $X = 255$  and  $Y = Z = 0$ . BZ is a no-op if  $Y = 0$  and  $Z = 1$ . MULU can never be a no-op, since it affects rH.

53. [15] List all MMIX opcodes that can possibly change the value of rH.
54. [20] List all MMIX opcodes that can possibly change the value of rA.
55. [21] List all MMIX opcodes that can possibly change the value of rL.
- 56. [28] Location #2000000000000000 contains a signed integer number,  $x$ . Write two programs that compute  $x^{13}$  in register \$0. One program should use the minimum number of MMIX memory locations; the other should use the minimum possible execution time. Assume that  $x^{13}$  fits into a single octabyte, and that all necessary constants have been preloaded into global registers.
- 57. [20] When a program changes one or more of its own instructions in memory, it is said to have *self-modifying code*. MMIX insists that a SYNCID command be issued before such modified commands are executed. Explain why self-modifying code is usually undesirable in a modern computer.
58. [50] Write a book about operating systems, which includes the complete design of an NNIX kernel for the MMIX architecture.

*Them fellers is a-mommixin' everything.*

— V. RANDOLPH and G. P. WILSON, *Down in the Holler* (1953)

### 1.3.2'. The MMIX Assembly Language

A symbolic language is used to make MMIX programs considerably easier to read and to write, and to save the programmer from worrying about tedious clerical details that often lead to unnecessary errors. This language, MMIXAL (“MMIX Assembly Language”), is an extension of the notation used for instructions in the previous section. Its main features are the optional use of alphabetic names to stand for numbers, and a label field to associate names with memory locations and register numbers.

MMIXAL can readily be comprehended if we consider first a simple example. The following code is part of a larger program; it is a subroutine to find the maximum of  $n$  elements  $X[1], \dots, X[n]$ , according to Algorithm 1.2.10M.

**Program M** (*Find the maximum*). Initially  $n$  is in register \$0, and the address of  $X[0]$  is in register x0, a global register defined elsewhere.

| Assembled code     | Line no. | LABEL   | OP  | EXPR     | Times | Remarks                                                   |
|--------------------|----------|---------|-----|----------|-------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
|                    | 01       | j       | IS  | \$0      |       | $j$                                                       |
|                    | 02       | m       | IS  | \$1      |       | $m$                                                       |
|                    | 03       | kk      | IS  | \$2      |       | $8k$                                                      |
|                    | 04       | xk      | IS  | \$3      |       | $X[k]$                                                    |
|                    | 05       | t       | IS  | \$255    |       | Temp storage                                              |
|                    | 06       |         | LOC | #100     |       |                                                           |
| #100: #39 02 00 03 | 07       | Maximum | SL  | kk,\$0,3 | 1     | <u>M1. Initialize.</u> $k \leftarrow n, j \leftarrow n$ . |
| #104: #8c 01 fe 02 | 08       |         | LDO | m,x0,kk  | 1     | $m \leftarrow X[n]$ .                                     |
| #108: #f0 00 00 06 | 09       |         | JMP | DecrK    | 1     | To M2 with $k \leftarrow n - 1$ .                         |

|                    |    |         |      |          |       |                                             |
|--------------------|----|---------|------|----------|-------|---------------------------------------------|
| #10c: #8c 03 fe 02 | 10 | Loop    | LDO  | xk,x0,kk | $n-1$ | <u>M3. Compare.</u>                         |
| #110: #30 ff 03 01 | 11 |         | CMP  | t,xk,m   | $n-1$ | $t \leftarrow [X[k] > m] - [X[k] < m]$ .    |
| #114: #5c ff 00 03 | 12 |         | PBNP | t,DecrK  | $n-1$ | To M5 if $X[k] \leq m$ .                    |
| #118: #c1 01 03 00 | 13 | ChangeM | SET  | m,xk     | $A$   | <u>M4. Change m.</u> $m \leftarrow X[k]$ .  |
| #11c: #3d 00 02 03 | 14 |         | SR   | j,kk,3   | $A$   | $j \leftarrow k$ .                          |
| #120: #25 02 02 08 | 15 | DecrK   | SUB  | kk,kk,8  | $n$   | <u>M5. Decrease k.</u> $k \leftarrow k-1$ . |
| #124: #55 00 ff fa | 16 |         | PBP  | kk,Loop  | $n$   | <u>M2. All tested?</u> To M3 if $k > 0$ .   |
| #128: #f8 02 00 00 | 17 |         | POP  | 2,0      | 1     | Return to main program. ■                   |

This program is an example of several things simultaneously:

a) The columns headed “LABEL”, “OP”, and “EXPR” are of principal interest; they contain a program in the MMIXAL symbolic machine language, and we shall explain the details of this program below.

b) The column headed “Assembled code” shows the actual numeric machine language that corresponds to the MMIXAL program. MMIXAL has been designed so that any MMIXAL program can easily be translated into numeric machine language; the translation is usually carried out by another computer program called an *assembly program* or *assembler*. Thus, programmers can do all of their machine language programming in MMIXAL, never bothering to determine the equivalent numeric codes by hand. Virtually all MMIX programs in this book are written in MMIXAL.

c) The column headed “Line no.” is not an essential part of the MMIXAL program; it is merely included with MMIXAL examples in this book so that we can readily refer to parts of the program.

d) The column headed “Remarks” gives explanatory information about the program, and it is cross-referenced to the steps of Algorithm 1.2.10M. The reader should compare that algorithm (page 96) with the program above. Notice that a little “programmer’s license” was used during the transcription into MMIX code; for example, step M2 has been put last.

e) The column headed “Times” will be instructive in many of the MMIX programs we will be studying in this book; it represents the *profile*, the number of times the instruction on that line will be executed during the course of the program. Thus, line 10 will be performed  $n-1$  times, etc. From this information we can determine the length of time required to perform the subroutine; it is  $n\mu + (5n + 4A + 5)v$ , where  $A$  is the quantity that was analyzed carefully in Section 1.2.10. (The PBNP instruction costs  $(n-1 + 2A)v$ .)

Now let’s discuss the MMIXAL part of Program M. Line 01, ‘j IS \$0’, says that symbol  $j$  stands for register \$0; lines 02–05 are similar. The effect of lines 01 and 03 can be seen on line 14, where the numeric equivalent of the instruction ‘SR j,kk,3’ appears as #3d 00 02 03, that is, ‘SR \$0,\$2,3’.

Line 06 says that the locations for succeeding lines should be chosen sequentially, beginning with #100. Therefore the symbol **Maximum** that appears in the label field of line 07 becomes equivalent to the number #100; the symbol **Loop** in line 10 is three tetrabytes further along, so it is equivalent to #10c.

On lines 07 through 17 the OP field contains the symbolic names of MMIX instructions: SL, LDO, etc. But the symbolic names IS and LOC, found in

the OP column of lines 01–06, are somewhat different; IS and LOC are called *pseudo-operations*, because they are operators of MMIXAL but not operators of MMIX. Pseudo-operations provide special information about a symbolic program, without being instructions of the program itself. Thus the line ‘j IS \$0’ only talks *about* Program M; it does not signify that any variable is to be set equal to the contents of register \$0 when the program is run. Notice that no instructions are assembled for lines 01–06.

Line 07 is a “shift left” instruction that sets  $k \leftarrow n$  by setting  $kk \leftarrow 8n$ . This program works with the value of  $8k$ , not  $k$ , because  $8k$  is needed for octabyte addresses in lines 08 and 10.

Line 09 jumps the control to line 15. The assembler, knowing that this JMP instruction is in location #108 and that DecrK is equivalent to #120, computes the relative offset  $(\#120 - \#108)/4 = 6$ . Similar relative addresses are computed for the branch commands in lines 12 and 16.

The rest of the symbolic code is self-explanatory. As mentioned earlier, Program M is intended to be part of a larger program; elsewhere the sequence

```

SET      $2,100
PUSHJ    $1,Maximum
STO      $1,Max

```

would, for example, jump to Program M with  $n$  set to 100. Program M would then find the largest of the elements  $X[1], \dots, X[100]$  and would return to the instruction ‘STO \$1,Max’ with the maximum value in \$1 and with its position,  $j$ , in \$2. (See exercise 3.)

Let’s look now at a program that is *complete*, not merely a subroutine. If the following program is named Hello, it will print out the famous message ‘Hello, world’ and stop.

**Program H** (*Hail the world*).

| Assembled code     | Line | LABEL  | OP   | EXPR           | Remarks                          |
|--------------------|------|--------|------|----------------|----------------------------------|
|                    | 01   | argv   | IS   | \$1            | The argument vector              |
|                    | 02   |        | LOC  | #100           |                                  |
| #100: #8f ff 01 00 | 03   | Main   | LDOU | \$255,argv,0   | \$255 ← address of program name. |
| #104: #00 00 07 01 | 04   |        | TRAP | 0,Fputs,StdOut | Print that name.                 |
| #108: #f4 ff 00 03 | 05   |        | GETA | \$255,String   | \$255 ← address of “, world”.    |
| #10c: #00 00 07 01 | 06   |        | TRAP | 0,Fputs,StdOut | Print that string.               |
| #110: #00 00 00 00 | 07   |        | TRAP | 0,Halt,0       | Stop.                            |
| #114: #2c 20 77 6f | 08   | String | BYTE | “, world”,#a,0 | String of characters             |
| #118: #72 6c 64 0a | 09   |        |      |                | with newline                     |
| #11c: #00          | 10   |        |      |                | and terminator ■                 |

Readers who have access to an MMIX assembler and simulator should take a moment to prepare a short computer file containing the LABEL OP EXPR portions of Program H before reading further. Name the file ‘Hello.mms’ and assemble it by saying, for example, ‘mmixal Hello.mms’. (The assembler will produce a file called ‘Hello.mmo’; the suffix .mms means “MMIX symbolic” and .mmo means “MMIX object.”) Now invoke the simulator by saying ‘mmix Hello’.

The MMIX simulator implements some of the simplest features of a hypothetical operating system called NNIX. If an object file called, say, `foo.mmo` is present, NNIX will launch it when a command line such as

`foo bar xyzyz` (1)

is given. You can obtain the corresponding behavior by invoking the simulator with the command line `'mmix <options> foo bar xyzyz'`, where `<options>` is a sequence of zero or more special requests. For example, option `-P` will print a profile of the program after it has halted.

An MMIX program always begins at symbolic location `Main`. At that time register `$0` contains the number of *command line arguments*, namely the number of words on the command line. Register `$1` contains the memory address of the first such argument, which is always the name of the program. The operating system has placed all of the arguments into consecutive octabytes, starting at the address in `$1` and ending with an octabyte of all zeros. Each argument is represented as a *string*, meaning that it is the address in memory of a sequence of zero or more nonzero bytes followed by a byte that is zero; the nonzero bytes are the *characters* of the string.

For example, the command line (1) would cause `$0` to be initially 3, and we might have

|                                                                   |                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <code>\$1 = #4000000000000008</code>                              | Pointer to the first string          |
| <code>M<sub>8</sub>[#4000000000000008] = #4000000000000028</code> | First argument, the string "foo"     |
| <code>M<sub>8</sub>[#4000000000000010] = #4000000000000030</code> | Second argument, the string "bar"    |
| <code>M<sub>8</sub>[#4000000000000018] = #4000000000000038</code> | Third argument, the string "xyzyz"   |
| <code>M<sub>8</sub>[#4000000000000020] = #0000000000000000</code> | Null pointer after the last argument |
| <code>M<sub>8</sub>[#4000000000000028] = #666f6f0000000000</code> | 'f', 'o', 'o', 0, 0, 0, 0, 0         |
| <code>M<sub>8</sub>[#4000000000000030] = #6261720000000000</code> | 'b', 'a', 'r', 0, 0, 0, 0, 0         |
| <code>M<sub>8</sub>[#4000000000000038] = #78797a7a79000000</code> | 'x', 'y', 'z', 'z', 'y', 0, 0, 0     |

NNIX sets up each argument string so that its characters begin at an octabyte boundary; strings in general can, however, start anywhere within an octabyte.

The first instruction of Program H, in line 03, puts the string pointer `M8[$1]` into register `$255`; this string is the program name `'Hello'`. Line 04 is a special **TRAP** instruction, which asks the operating system to put string `$255` into the *standard output* file. Similarly, lines 05 and 06 ask NNIX to contribute `' , world'` and a newline character to the standard output. The symbol `Fputs` is predefined to equal 7, and the symbol `StdOut` is predefined to equal 1. Line 07, `'TRAP 0,Halt,0'`, is the normal way to terminate a program. We will discuss all such special **TRAP** commands at the end of this section.

The characters of the string output by lines 05 and 06 are generated by the **BYTE** command in line 08. **BYTE** is a pseudo-operation of MMIXAL, not an operation of MMIX; but **BYTE** is different from pseudo-ops like **IS** and **LOC**, because it does assemble data into memory. In general, **BYTE** assembles a sequence of expressions into one-byte constants. The construction `" , world"` in line 08 is MMIXAL's shorthand for the list

`' , 'w', 'o', 'r', 'l', 'd'`

of seven one-character constants. The constant `#a` on line 08 is the ASCII *newline* character, which causes a new line to begin when it appears in a file being printed. The final `'0'` on line 08 terminates the string. Thus line 08 is a list of nine expressions, and it leads to the nine bytes shown at the left of lines 08–10.

Our third example introduces a few more features of the assembly language. The object is to compute and print a table of the first 500 prime numbers, with 10 columns of 50 numbers each. The table should appear as follows, when the standard output of our program is listed as a text file:

```

First Five Hundred Primes
0002 0233 0547 0877 1229 1597 1993 2371 2749 3187
0003 0239 0557 0881 1231 1601 1997 2377 2753 3191
0005 0241 0563 0883 1237 1607 1999 2381 2767 3203
      ⋮                               ⋮
0229 0541 0863 1223 1583 1987 2357 2741 3181 3571

```

We will use the following method.

**Algorithm P** (*Print table of 500 primes*). This algorithm has two distinct parts: Steps P1–P8 prepare an internal table of 500 primes, and steps P9–P11 print the answer in the form shown above.

- P1.** [Start table.] Set  $\text{PRIME}[1] \leftarrow 2$ ,  $n \leftarrow 3$ ,  $j \leftarrow 1$ . (In this program,  $n$  runs through the odd numbers that are candidates for primes;  $j$  keeps track of how many primes have been found so far.)
- P2.** [ $n$  is prime.] Set  $j \leftarrow j + 1$ ,  $\text{PRIME}[j] \leftarrow n$ .
- P3.** [500 found?] If  $j = 500$ , go to step P9.
- P4.** [Advance  $n$ .] Set  $n \leftarrow n + 2$ .
- P5.** [ $k \leftarrow 2$ .] Set  $k \leftarrow 2$ . ( $\text{PRIME}[k]$  will run through  $n$ 's possible prime divisors.)
- P6.** [ $\text{PRIME}[k] \setminus n?$ ] Divide  $n$  by  $\text{PRIME}[k]$ ; let  $q$  be the quotient and  $r$  the remainder. If  $r = 0$  (hence  $n$  is not prime), go to P4.
- P7.** [ $\text{PRIME}[k]$  large?] If  $q \leq \text{PRIME}[k]$ , go to P2. (In such a case,  $n$  must be prime; the proof of this fact is interesting and a little unusual—see exercise 11.)
- P8.** [Advance  $k$ .] Increase  $k$  by 1, and go to P6.
- P9.** [Print title.] Now we are ready to print the table. Output the title line and set  $m \leftarrow 1$ .
- P10.** [Print line.] Output a line that contains  $\text{PRIME}[m]$ ,  $\text{PRIME}[50 + m]$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $\text{PRIME}[450 + m]$  in the proper format.
- P11.** [500 printed?] Increase  $m$  by 1. If  $m \leq 50$ , return to P10; otherwise the algorithm terminates. ■

**Program P** (*Print table of 500 primes*). This program has deliberately been written in a slightly clumsy fashion in order to illustrate most of the features of MMIXAL in a single program.

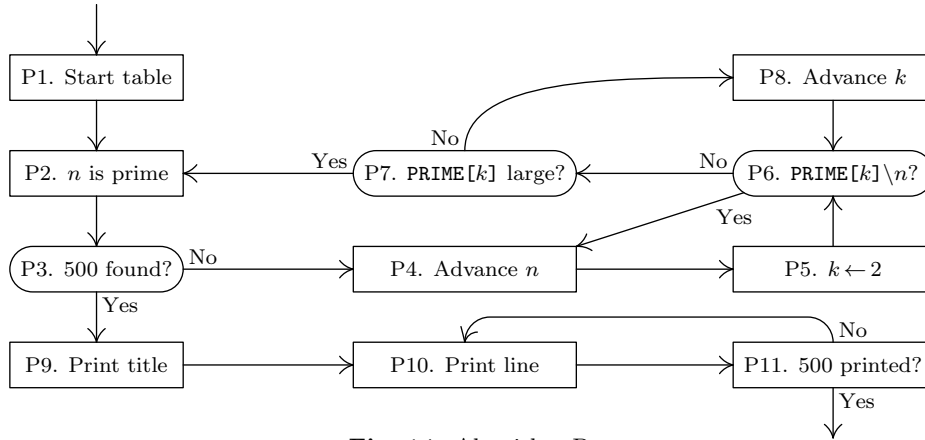


Fig. 14. Algorithm P.

|    |                       |                 |              |                                                           |
|----|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 01 | % Example program ... | Table of primes |              |                                                           |
| 02 | L                     | IS              | 500          | The number of primes to find                              |
| 03 | t                     | IS              | \$255        | Temporary storage                                         |
| 04 | n                     | GREG            | 0            | Prime candidate                                           |
| 05 | q                     | GREG            | 0            | Quotient                                                  |
| 06 | r                     | GREG            | 0            | Remainder                                                 |
| 07 | jj                    | GREG            | 0            | Index for PRIME[j]                                        |
| 08 | kk                    | GREG            | 0            | Index for PRIME[k]                                        |
| 09 | pk                    | GREG            | 0            | Value of PRIME[k]                                         |
| 10 | mm                    | IS              | kk           | Index for output lines                                    |
| 11 |                       | LOC             | Data_Segment |                                                           |
| 12 | PRIME1                | WYDE            | 2            | PRIME[1] = 2                                              |
| 13 |                       | LOC             | PRIME1+2*L   |                                                           |
| 14 | ptop                  | GREG            | @            | Address of PRIME[501]                                     |
| 15 | j0                    | GREG            | PRIME1+2-@   | Initial value of jj                                       |
| 16 | BUF                   | OCTA            | 0            | Place to form decimal string                              |
| 17 |                       |                 |              |                                                           |
| 18 |                       | LOC             | #100         |                                                           |
| 19 | Main                  | SET             | n,3          | <u>P1. Start table.</u> $n \leftarrow 3$ .                |
| 20 |                       | SET             | jj,j0        | $j \leftarrow 1$ .                                        |
| 21 | 2H                    | STWU            | n,ptop,jj    | <u>P2. n is prime.</u> $\text{PRIME}[j+1] \leftarrow n$ . |
| 22 |                       | INCL            | jj,2         | $j \leftarrow j + 1$ .                                    |
| 23 | 3H                    | BZ              | jj,2F        | <u>P3. 500 found?</u>                                     |
| 24 | 4H                    | INCL            | n,2          | <u>P4. Advance n.</u>                                     |
| 25 | 5H                    | SET             | kk,j0        | <u>P5. <math>k \leftarrow 2</math>.</u>                   |
| 26 | 6H                    | LDWU            | pk,ptop,kk   | <u>P6. <math>\text{PRIME}[k] \setminus n</math>?</u>      |
| 27 |                       | DIV             | q,n,pk       | $q \leftarrow \lfloor n/\text{PRIME}[k] \rfloor$ .        |
| 28 |                       | GET             | r,rR         | $r \leftarrow n \bmod \text{PRIME}[k]$ .                  |
| 29 |                       | BZ              | r,4B         | To P4 if $r = 0$ .                                        |
| 30 | 7H                    | CMP             | t,q,pk       | <u>P7. <math>\text{PRIME}[k]</math> large?</u>            |
| 31 |                       | BNP             | t,2B         | To P2 if $q \leq \text{PRIME}[k]$ .                       |
| 32 | 8H                    | INCL            | kk,2         | <u>P8. Advance k.</u> $k \leftarrow k + 1$ .              |
| 33 |                       | JMP             | 6B           | To P6.                                                    |

|    |        |      |                             |                                         |
|----|--------|------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 34 |        | GREG | @                           | Base address                            |
| 35 | Title  | BYTE | "First Five Hundred Primes" |                                         |
| 36 | NewLn  | BYTE | #a,0                        | Newline and string terminator           |
| 37 | Blanks | BYTE | " ",0                       | String of three blanks                  |
| 38 | 2H     | LDA  | t,Title                     | <u>P9. Print title.</u>                 |
| 39 |        | TRAP | 0,Fputs,StdOut              |                                         |
| 40 |        | NEG  | mm,2                        | Initialize <i>m</i> .                   |
| 41 | 3H     | ADD  | mm,mm,j0                    | <u>P10. Print line.</u>                 |
| 42 |        | LDA  | t,Blanks                    | Output " ".                             |
| 43 |        | TRAP | 0,Fputs,StdOut              |                                         |
| 44 | 2H     | LDWU | pk,ptop,mm                  | $pk \leftarrow$ prime to be printed.    |
| 45 | 0H     | GREG | #2030303030000000           | " 0000",0,0,0                           |
| 46 |        | STOU | 0B,BUF                      | Prepare buffer for decimal conversion.  |
| 47 |        | LDA  | t,BUF+4                     | $t \leftarrow$ position of units digit. |
| 48 | 1H     | DIV  | pk,pk,10                    | $pk \leftarrow \lfloor pk/10 \rfloor$ . |
| 49 |        | GET  | r,rR                        | $r \leftarrow$ next digit.              |
| 50 |        | INCL | r,'0'                       | $r \leftarrow$ ASCII digit <i>r</i> .   |
| 51 |        | STBU | r,t,0                       | Store <i>r</i> in the buffer.           |
| 52 |        | SUB  | t,t,1                       | Move one byte to the left.              |
| 53 |        | PBNZ | pk,1B                       | Repeat on remaining digits.             |
| 54 |        | LDA  | t,BUF                       | Output " " and four digits.             |
| 55 |        | TRAP | 0,Fputs,StdOut              |                                         |
| 56 |        | INCL | mm,2*L/10                   | Advance by 50 wydes.                    |
| 57 |        | PBN  | mm,2B                       |                                         |
| 58 |        | LDA  | t,NewLn                     | Output a newline.                       |
| 59 |        | TRAP | 0,Fputs,StdOut              |                                         |
| 60 |        | CMP  | t,mm,2*(L/10-1)             | <u>P11. 500 printed?</u>                |
| 61 |        | PBNZ | t,3B                        | To P10 if not done.                     |
| 62 |        | TRAP | 0,Halt,0                    | ■                                       |

The following points of interest should be noted about this program:

1. Line 01 begins with a percent sign and line 17 is blank. Such "comment" lines are merely explanatory; they have no effect on the assembled program.

Each non-comment line has three fields called LABEL, OP, and EXPR, separated by spaces. The EXPR field contains one or more symbolic expressions separated by commas. Comments may follow the EXPR field.

2. As in Program M, the pseudo-operation IS sets the equivalent of a symbol. For example, in line 02 the equivalent of L is set to 500, which is the number of primes to be computed. Notice that in line 03, the equivalent of t is set to \$255, a *register number*, while L's equivalent was 500, a *pure number*. Some symbols have register number equivalents, ranging from \$0 to \$255; others have pure equivalents, which are octabytes. We will generally use symbolic names that begin with a lowercase letter to denote registers, and names that begin with an uppercase letter to denote pure values, although MMIXAL does not enforce this convention.

3. The pseudo-op GREG on line 04 allocates a *global register*. Register \$255 is always global; the first GREG causes \$254 to be global, and the next GREG does

the same for \$253, etc. Lines 04–09 therefore allocate six global registers, and they cause the symbols `n`, `q`, `r`, `jj`, `kk`, `pk` to be respectively equivalent to \$254, \$253, \$252, \$251, \$250, \$249. Line 10 makes `mm` equivalent to \$250.

If the `EXPR` field of a `GREG` definition is zero, as it is on lines 04–09, the global register is assumed to have a dynamically varying value when the program is run. But if a nonzero expression is given, as on lines 14, 15, 34, and 45, the global register is assumed to be constant throughout a program's execution. `MMIXAL` uses such global registers as *base addresses* when subsequent instructions refer to memory. For example, consider the instruction '`LDA t,BUF+4`' in line 47. `MMIXAL` is able to discover that global register `ptop` holds the address of `BUF`; therefore '`LDA t,BUF+4`' can be assembled as '`LDA t,ptop,4`'. Similarly, the `LDA` instructions on lines 38, 42, and 58 make use of the nameless base address introduced by the instruction '`GREG @`' on line 34. (Recall from Section 1.3.1' that `@` denotes the current location.)

4. A good assembly language should mimic the way a programmer *thinks* about machine programs. One example of this philosophy is the automatic allocation of global registers and base addresses. Another example is the idea of *local symbols* such as the symbol `2H`, which appears in the label field of lines 21, 38, and 44.

Local symbols are special symbols whose equivalents can be *redefined* as many times as desired. A global symbol like `PRIME1` has but one significance throughout a program, and if it were to appear in the label field of more than one line an error would be indicated by the assembler. But local symbols have a different nature; we write, for example, `2H` ("2 here") in the `LABEL` field, and `2F` ("2 forward") or `2B` ("2 backward") in the `EXPR` field of an `MMIXAL` line:

`2B` means the closest *previous* label `2H`;  
`2F` means the closest *following* label `2H`.

Thus the `2F` in line 23 refers to line 38; the `2B` in line 31 refers back to line 21; and the `2B` in line 57 refers to line 44. The symbols `2F` and `2B` never refer to their *own* line. For example, the `MMIXAL` instructions

```
2H    IS    $10
2H    BZ    2B,2F
2H    IS    2B-4
```

are virtually equivalent to the single instruction

```
BZ    $10,@-4.
```

The symbols `2F` and `2B` should never be used in the `LABEL` field; the symbol `2H` should never be used in the `EXPR` field. If `2B` occurs before any appearance of `2H`, it denotes zero. There are ten local symbols, which can be obtained by replacing '2' in these examples by any digit from 0 to 9.

The idea of local symbols was introduced by M. E. Conway in 1958, in connection with an assembly program for the UNIVAC I. Local symbols free us from the obligation to choose a symbolic name when we merely want to refer to



an instruction a few lines away. There often is no appropriate name for nearby locations, so programmers have tended to introduce meaningless symbols like *X1*, *X2*, *X3*, etc., with the potential danger of duplication.

5. The reference to **Data\_Segment** on line 11 introduces another new idea. In most embodiments of MMIX, the  $2^{64}$ -byte virtual address space is broken into two parts, called *user space* (addresses `#0000000000000000 .. #7fffffffffffffff`) and *kernel space* (addresses `#8000000000000000 .. #fffffffffffffff`). The “negative” addresses of kernel space are reserved for the operating system.

User space is further subdivided into four segments of  $2^{61}$  bytes each. First comes the *text segment*; the user’s program generally resides here. Then comes the *data segment*, beginning at virtual address `#2000000000000000`; this is for variables whose memory locations are allocated once and for all by the assembler, and for other variables allocated by the user without the help of the system library. Next is the *pool segment*, beginning at `#4000000000000000`; command line arguments and other dynamically allocated data go here. Finally the *stack segment*, which starts at `#6000000000000000`, is used by the MMIX hardware to maintain the register stack governed by **PUSH**, **POP**, **SAVE**, and **UNSAVE**. Three symbols,

```
Data_Segment = #2000000000000000,
Pool_Segment = #4000000000000000,
Stack_Segment = #6000000000000000,
```

are predefined for convenience in MMIXAL. Nothing should be assembled into the pool segment or the stack segment, although a program may refer to data found there. References to addresses near the beginning of a segment might be more efficient than references to addresses that come near the end; for example, MMIX might not be able to access the last byte of the text segment, `M[#1fffffffffffffff]`, as fast as it can read the first byte of the data segment.

Our programs for MMIX will always consider the text segment to be *read-only*: Everything in memory locations less than `#2000000000000000` will remain constant once a program has been assembled and loaded. Therefore Program P puts the prime table and the output buffer into the data segment.

6. The text and data segments are entirely zero at the beginning of a program, except for instructions and data that have been loaded in accordance with the MMIXAL specification of the program. If two or more bytes of data are destined for the same cell of memory, the loader will fill that cell with their bitwise exclusive-or.

7. The symbolic expression ‘**PRIME1+2\*L**’ on line 13 indicates that MMIXAL has the ability to do arithmetic on octabytes. See also the more elaborate example ‘**2\*(L/10-1)**’ on line 60.

8. As a final note about Program P, we can observe that its instructions have been organized so that registers are counted towards zero, and tested against zero, whenever possible. For example, register *jj* holds a quantity that is related to the positive variable *j* of Algorithm P, but *jj* is normally negative; this change

makes it easy for the machine to decide when  $j$  has reached 500 (line 23). Lines 40–61 are particularly noteworthy in this regard, although perhaps a bit tricky. The binary-to-decimal conversion routine in lines 45–55, based on division by 10, is simple but not the fastest possible. More efficient methods are discussed in Section 4.4.

It may be of interest to note a few of the statistics observed when Program P was actually run. The division instruction in line 27 was executed 9538 times. The total time to perform steps P1–P8 (lines 19–33) was  $10036\mu + 641543v$ ; steps P9–P11 cost an additional  $2804\mu + 124559v$ , not counting the time taken by the operating system to handle TRAP requests.

**Language summary.** Now that we have seen three examples of what can be done in MMIXAL, it is time to discuss the rules more carefully, observing in particular the things that *cannot* be done. The following comparatively few rules define the language.

1. A *symbol* is a string of letters and/or digits, beginning with a letter. The underscore character ‘\_’ is regarded as a letter, for purposes of this definition, and so are all Unicode characters whose code value exceeds 126. *Examples:* PRIME1, Data\_Segment, Main, \_\_, pâté.

The special constructions  $dH$ ,  $dF$ , and  $dB$ , where  $d$  is a single digit, are effectively replaced by unique symbols according to the “local symbol” convention explained above.

2. A *constant* is either

- a) a *decimal constant*, consisting of one or more decimal digits  $\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9\}$ , representing an unsigned octabyte in radix 10 notation; or
- b) a *hexadecimal constant*, consisting of a hash mark # followed by one or more hexadecimal digits  $\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, a, b, c, d, e, f, A, B, C, D, E, F\}$ , representing an unsigned octabyte in radix 16 notation; or
- c) a *character constant*, consisting of a quote character ‘ ’ followed by any character other than newline, followed by another quote ‘ ’; this represents the ASCII or Unicode value of the quoted character.

*Examples:* 65, #41, ‘A’, 39, #27, ‘ ’, 31639, #7B97, ‘算’.

A *string constant* is a double-quote character " followed by one or more characters other than newline or double-quote, followed by another double-quote ". This construction is equivalent to a sequence of character constants for the individual characters, separated by commas.

3. Each appearance of a symbol in an MMIXAL program is said to be either a “defined symbol” or a “future reference.” A *defined symbol* is a symbol that has appeared in the LABEL field of a preceding line of this MMIXAL program. A *future reference* is a symbol that has not yet been defined in this way.

A few symbols, like rR and ROUND\_NEAR and V\_BIT and W\_Handler and Fputs, are predefined because they refer to constants associated with the MMIX

hardware or with its rudimentary operating system. Such symbols can be re-defined, because MMIXAL does not assume that every programmer knows all their names. But no symbol should appear as a label more than once.

Every defined symbol has an equivalent value, which is either *pure* (an unsigned octabyte) or a *register number* (\$0 or \$1 or ... or \$255).

4. A *primary* is either

- a) a symbol; or
- b) a constant; or
- c) the character  $\mathfrak{Q}$ , denoting the current location; or
- d) an expression enclosed in parentheses; or
- e) a unary operator followed by a primary.

The unary operators are + (affirmation, which does nothing), - (negation, which subtracts from zero), ~ (complementation, which changes all 64 bits), and \$ (registerization, which converts a pure value to a register number).

5. A *term* is a sequence of one or more primaries separated by strong binary operators; an *expression* is a sequence of one or more terms separated by weak binary operators. The *strong binary operators* are \* (multiplication), / (division), // (fractional division), % (remainder), << (left shift), >> (right shift), and & (bitwise and). The *weak binary operators* are + (addition), - (subtraction), | (bitwise or), and ^ (bitwise exclusive-or). These operations act on unsigned octabytes;  $x//y$  denotes  $\lfloor 2^{64}x/y \rfloor$  if  $x < y$ , and it is undefined if  $x \geq y$ . Binary operators of the same strength are performed from left to right; thus  $a/b/c$  is  $(a/b)/c$  and  $a-b+c$  is  $(a-b)+c$ .

*Example:*  $\#ab<<32+k\&\sim(k-1)$  is an expression, the sum of terms  $\#ab<<32$  and  $k\&\sim(k-1)$ . The latter term is the bitwise and of primaries  $k$  and  $\sim(k-1)$ . The latter primary is the complement of  $(k-1)$ , a parenthesized expression that is the difference of two terms  $k$  and 1. The term 1 is also a primary, and also a constant, in fact it is a decimal constant. If symbol  $k$  is equivalent to  $\#cdef00$ , say, the entire expression  $\#ab<<32+k\&\sim(k-1)$  is equivalent to  $\#ab00000100$ .

Binary operations are allowed only on pure numbers, except in cases like  $\$1+\$2 = \$3$  and  $\$3-\$1 = 2$ . Future references cannot be combined with anything else; an expression like  $2F+1$  is always illegal, because  $2F$  never corresponds to a defined symbol.

6. An *instruction* consists of three fields:

- a) the LABEL field, which is either blank or a symbol;
- b) the OP field, which is either an MMIX opcode or an MMIXAL pseudo-op;
- c) the EXPR field, which is a list of one or more expressions separated by commas. The EXPR field can also be blank, in which case it is equivalent to the single expression 0.

7. Assembly of an instruction takes place in three steps:

- a) The current location `@` is aligned, if necessary, by increasing it to the next multiple of
  - 8, if `OP` is `OCTA`;
  - 4, if `OP` is `TETRA` or an `MMIX` opcode;
  - 2, if `OP` is `WYDE`.
- b) The symbol in `LABEL`, if present, is defined to be `@`, unless `OP = IS` or `OP = GREG`.
- c) If `OP` is a pseudo-operation, see rule 8. Otherwise `OP` is an `MMIX` instruction; the `OP` and `EXPR` fields define a tetrabyte as explained in Section 1.3.1', and `@` advances by 4. Some `MMIX` opcodes have three operands in the `EXPR` field, others have two, and others have only one.

If `OP` is `ADD`, say, `MMIXAL` will expect three operands, and will check that the first and second operands are register numbers. If the third operand is pure, `MMIXAL` will change the opcode from `#20` ("add") to `#21` ("add immediate"), and will check that the immediate value is less than 256.

If `OP` is `SETH`, say, `MMIXAL` will expect two operands. The first operand should be a register number; the second should be a pure value less than 65536.

An `OP` like `BNZ` takes two operands: a register and a pure number. The pure number should be expressible as a relative address; in other words, its value should be expressible as  $@ + 4k$  where  $-65536 \leq k < 65536$ .

Any `OP` that refers to memory, like `LDB` or `GO`, has a two-operand form `$X,A` as well as the three-operand forms `$X,$Y,$Z` or `$X,$Y,Z`. The two-operand option can be used when the memory address `A` is expressible as the sum `$Y + Z` of a base address and a one-byte value; see rule 8(b).

8. `MMIXAL` includes the following pseudo-operations.

- a) `OP = IS`: The `EXPR` should be a single expression; the symbol in `LABEL`, if present, is made equivalent to the value of this expression.
- b) `OP = GREG`: The `EXPR` should be a single expression with a pure equivalent,  $x$ . The symbol in `LABEL`, if present, is made equivalent to the largest previously unallocated global register number, and this global register will contain  $x$  when the program begins. If  $x \neq 0$ , the value of  $x$  is considered to be a *base address*, and the program should not change that global register.
- c) `OP = LOC`: The `EXPR` should be a single expression with a pure equivalent,  $x$ . The value of `@` is set to  $x$ . For example, the instruction `'T LOC @+1000'` defines symbol `T` to be the address of the first of a sequence of 1000 bytes, and advances `@` to the byte following that sequence.
- d) `OP = BYTE, WYDE, TETRA, or OCTA`: The `EXPR` field should be a list of pure expressions that each fit in 1, 2, 4, or 8 bytes, respectively.

9. `MMIXAL` restricts future references so that the assembly process can work quickly in one pass over the program. A future reference is permitted only

- a) in a relative address: as the operand of `JMP`, or as the second operand of a branch, probable branch, `PUSHJ`, or `GETA`; or
- b) in an expression assembled by `OCTA`.

```

% Example program ... Table of primes
L IS 500          The number of primes to find
t IS $255        Temporary storage
n GREG           ;; Prime candidate
q GREG /* Quotient */
r GREG // Remainder
jj GREG 0        Index for PRIME[j]
:
PBN mm,2B
LDA t,NewLn; TRAP 0,Fputs,StdOut
CMP t,mm,2*(L/10-1) ; PBNZ t,3B;      TRAP 0,Halt,0

```

**Fig. 15.** Program P as a computer file: The assembler tolerates many formats.

MMIXAL also has a few additional features relevant to system programming that do not concern us here. Complete details of the full language appear in the *MMIXware* document, together with the complete logic of a working assembler.

A free format can be used when presenting an MMIXAL program to the assembler (see Fig. 15). The **LABEL** field starts at the beginning of a line and continues up to the first blank space. The next nonblank character begins the **OP** field, which continues to the next blank, etc. The whole line is a comment if the first nonblank character is not a letter or digit; otherwise comments start after the **EXPR** field. Notice that the **GREG** definitions for **n**, **q**, and **r** in Fig. 15 have a blank **EXPR** field (which is equivalent to the single expression ‘0’); therefore the comments on those lines need to be introduced by some sort of special delimiter. But no such delimiter is necessary on the **GREG** line for **jj**, because an explicit **EXPR** of 0 appears there.

The final lines of Fig. 15 illustrate the fact that two or more instructions can be placed on a single line of input to the assembler, if they are separated by semicolons. If an instruction following a semicolon has a nonblank label, the label must immediately follow the ‘;’.

A consistent format would obviously be better than the hodgepodge of different styles shown in Fig. 15, because computer files are easier to read when they aren’t so chaotic. But the assembler itself is very forgiving; it doesn’t mind occasional sloppiness.

**Primitive input and output.** Let us conclude this section by discussing the special **TRAP** operations supported by the MMIX simulator. These operations provide basic input and output functions on which facilities at a much higher level could be built. A two-instruction sequence of the form

$$\text{SET } \$255, \langle \text{arg} \rangle; \text{TRAP } 0, \langle \text{function} \rangle, \langle \text{handle} \rangle \quad (2)$$

is usually used to invoke such a function, where  $\langle \text{arg} \rangle$  points to a parameter and  $\langle \text{handle} \rangle$  identifies the relevant file. For example, Program H uses

$$\text{GETA } \$255, \text{String}; \text{TRAP } 0, \text{Fputs}, \text{StdOut}$$

to put a string into the standard output file, and Program P is similar.

After the **TRAP** has been serviced by the operating system, register \$255 will contain a return value. In each case *this value will be negative if and only if an error occurred*. Programs H and P do not check for file errors, because they assume that the correctness or incorrectness of the standard output will speak for itself; but error detection and error recovery are usually important in well-written programs.

- **Fopen**(*handle*, *name*, *mode*). Each of the ten primitive input/output traps applies to a *handle*, which is a one-byte integer. **Fopen** associates *handle* with an external file whose name is the string *name*, and prepares to do input and/or output on that file. The third parameter, *mode*, must be one of the values **TextRead**, **TextWrite**, **BinaryRead**, **BinaryWrite**, or **BinaryReadWrite**, all of which are predefined in MMIXAL. In the three **...Write** modes, any previous file contents are discarded. The value returned is 0 if the handle was successfully opened, otherwise **-1**.

The calling sequence for **Fopen** is

```
LDA $255,Arg; TRAP 0,Fopen,<handle>
```

(3)

where **Arg** is a two-octabyte sequence

```
Arg OCTA <name>,<mode>
```

(4)

that has been placed elsewhere in memory. For example, to call the function **Fopen**(5, "foo", **BinaryWrite**) in an MMIXAL program, we could put

```
Arg OCTA 1F,BinaryWrite
1H BYTE "foo",0
```

into, say, the data segment, and then give the instructions

```
LDA $255,Arg; TRAP 0,Fopen,5.
```

This would open handle 5 for writing a new file of binary output,\* to be named "foo".

Three handles are already open at the beginning of each program: The standard input file **StdIn** (handle 0) has mode **TextRead**; the standard output file **StdOut** (handle 1) has mode **TextWrite**; the standard error file **StdErr** (handle 2) also has mode **TextWrite**.

- **Fclose**(*handle*). If *handle* has been opened, **Fclose** causes it to be closed, hence no longer associated with any file. Again the result is 0 if successful, or **-1** if the file was already closed or unclosable. The calling sequence is simply

```
TRAP 0,Fclose,<handle>
```

(5)

because there is no need to put anything in \$255.

---

\* Different computer systems have different notions of what constitutes a text file and what constitutes a binary file. Each MMIX simulator adopts the conventions of the operating system on which it resides.

- **Fread**(*handle*, *buffer*, *size*). The file handle should have been opened with mode **TextRead**, **BinaryRead**, or **BinaryReadWrite**. The next *size* bytes are read from the file into MMIX's memory starting at address *buffer*. The value  $n - size$  is returned, where  $n$  is the number of bytes successfully read and stored, or  $-1 - size$  if an error occurred. The calling sequence is

$$\text{LDA } \$255, \text{Arg}; \text{ TRAP } 0, \text{Fread}, \langle \text{handle} \rangle \quad (6)$$

with two octabytes for the other arguments

$$\text{Arg OCTA } \langle \text{buffer} \rangle, \langle \text{size} \rangle \quad (7)$$

as in (3) and (4).

- **Fgets**(*handle*, *buffer*, *size*). The file handle should have been opened with mode **TextRead**, **BinaryRead**, or **BinaryReadWrite**. One-byte characters are read into MMIX's memory starting at address *buffer*, until either  $size - 1$  characters have been read and stored or a newline character has been read and stored; the next byte in memory is then set to zero. If an error or end of file occurs before reading is complete, the memory contents are undefined and the value  $-1$  is returned; otherwise the number of characters successfully read and stored is returned. The calling sequence is the same as (6) and (7), except of course that **Fgets** replaces **Fread** in (6).

- **Fgetws**(*handle*, *buffer*, *size*). This command is the same as **Fgets**, except that it applies to wyde characters instead of one-byte characters. Up to  $size - 1$  wyde characters are read; a wyde newline is #000a.

- **Fwrite**(*handle*, *buffer*, *size*). The file handle should have been opened with one of the modes **TextWrite**, **BinaryWrite**, or **BinaryReadWrite**. The next *size* bytes are written from MMIX's memory starting at address *buffer*. The value  $n - size$  is returned, where  $n$  is the number of bytes successfully written. The calling sequence is analogous to (6) and (7).

- **Fputs**(*handle*, *string*). The file handle should have been opened with mode **TextWrite**, **BinaryWrite**, or **BinaryReadWrite**. One-byte characters are written from MMIX's memory to the file, starting at address *string*, up to but not including the first byte equal to zero. The number of bytes written is returned, or  $-1$  on error. The calling sequence is

$$\text{SET } \$255, \langle \text{string} \rangle; \text{ TRAP } 0, \text{Fputs}, \langle \text{handle} \rangle. \quad (8)$$

- **Fputws**(*handle*, *string*). This command is the same as **Fputs**, except that it applies to wyde characters instead of one-byte characters.

- **Fseek**(*handle*, *offset*). The file handle should have been opened with mode **BinaryRead**, **BinaryWrite**, or **BinaryReadWrite**. This operation causes the next input or output operation to begin at *offset* bytes from the beginning of the file, if  $offset \geq 0$ , or at  $-offset - 1$  bytes before the end of the file, if  $offset < 0$ . (For example,  $offset = 0$  "rewinds" the file to its very beginning;  $offset = -1$

moves forward all the way to the end.) The result is 0 if successful, or  $-1$  if the stated positioning could not be done. The calling sequence is

SET \$255,⟨offset⟩; TRAP 0,Fseek,⟨handle⟩. (9)

An **Fseek** command must be given when switching from input to output or from output to input in **BinaryReadWrite** mode.

- **Ftell**(*handle*). The given file handle should have been opened with mode **BinaryRead**, **BinaryWrite**, or **BinaryReadWrite**. This operation returns the current file position, measured in bytes from the beginning, or  $-1$  if an error has occurred. The calling sequence is simply

TRAP 0,Ftell,⟨handle⟩. (10)

Complete details about all ten of these input/output functions appear in the **MMIXware** document, together with a reference implementation. The symbols

|             |             |                     |      |
|-------------|-------------|---------------------|------|
| Fopen = 1,  | Fwrite = 6, | TextRead = 0,       |      |
| Fclose = 2, | Fputs = 7,  | TextWrite = 1,      |      |
| Fread = 3,  | Fputws = 8, | BinaryRead = 2,     | (11) |
| Fgets = 4,  | Fseek = 9,  | BinaryWrite = 3,    |      |
| Fgetws = 5, | Ftell = 10, | BinaryReadWrite = 4 |      |

are predefined in **MMIXAL**; also **Halt** = 0.

### EXERCISES — First set

1. [05] (a) What is the meaning of ‘4B’ in line 29 of Program P? (b) Would the program still work if the label of line 24 were changed to ‘2H’ and the **EXPR** field of line 29 were changed to ‘r,2B’?

2. [10] Explain what happens if an **MMIXAL** program contains several instances of the line

9H IS 9B+1

and no other occurrences of 9H.

► 3. [23] What is the effect of the following program?

|                         | LOC  | Data_Segment                 |
|-------------------------|------|------------------------------|
| X0                      | IS   | @                            |
| N                       | IS   | 100                          |
| x0                      | GREG | X0                           |
| ⟨Insert Program M here⟩ |      |                              |
| Main                    | GETA | t,9F; TRAP 0,Fread,StdIn     |
|                         | SET  | \$0,N<<3                     |
| 1H                      | SR   | \$2,\$0,3; PUSHJ \$1,Maximum |
|                         | LDO  | \$3,x0,\$0                   |
|                         | SL   | \$2,\$2,3                    |
|                         | STO  | \$1,x0,\$0; STO \$3,x0,\$2   |
|                         | SUB  | \$0,\$0,1<<3; PBNZ \$0,1B    |
|                         | GETA | t,9F; TRAP 0,Fwrite,StdOut   |
|                         | TRAP | 0,Halt,0                     |
| 9H                      | OCTA | X0+1<<3,N<<3   ■             |



4. [10] What is the value of the constant #112233445566778899?
5. [11] What do you get from 'BYTE 3+"pills"+6'?
- ▶ 6. [15] True or false: The single instruction **TETRA** <expr1>, <expr2> always has the same effect as the pair of instructions **TETRA** <expr1>; **TETRA** <expr2>.
7. [05] John H. Quick (a student) was shocked, shocked to find that the instruction **GETA** \$0, @+1 gave the same result as **GETA** \$0, @. Explain why he should not have been surprised.
- ▶ 8. [15] What's a good way to align the current location @ so that it is a multiple of 16, increasing it by 0..15 as necessary?
9. [10] What changes to Program P will make it print a table of 600 primes?
- ▶ 10. [25] Assemble Program P by hand. (It won't take as long as you think.) What are the actual numerical contents of memory, corresponding to that symbolic program?
11. [HM20] (a) Show that every nonprime  $n > 1$  has a divisor  $d$  with  $1 < d \leq \sqrt{n}$ . (b) Use this fact to show that  $n$  is prime if it passes the test in step P7 of Algorithm P.
12. [15] The **GREG** instruction on line 34 of Program P defines a base address that is used for the string constants **Title**, **NewLn**, and **Blank** on lines 38, 42, and 58. Suggest a way to avoid using this extra global register, without making the program run slower.
13. [20] Unicode characters make it possible to print the first 500 primes as

أول خمس ميات الأرقام الأولية

|      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| ٣١٨٧ | ٢٧٤٩ | ٢٣٧١ | ١٩٩٣ | ١٥٩٧ | ١٢٢٩ | ٠٨٧٧ | ٠٥٤٧ | ٠٢٣٣ | ٠٠٠٢ |
| ٣١٩١ | ٢٧٥٣ | ٢٣٧٧ | ١٩٩٧ | ١٦٠١ | ١٢٣١ | ٠٨٨١ | ٠٥٥٧ | ٠٢٣٩ | ٠٠٠٣ |
| ٣٢٠٣ | ٢٧٦٧ | ٢٣٨١ | ١٩٩٩ | ١٦٠٧ | ١٢٣٧ | ٠٨٨٣ | ٠٥٦٣ | ٠٢٤١ | ٠٠٠٥ |
| ⋮    |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      | ⋮    |
| ٣٥٧١ | ٣١٨١ | ٢٧٤١ | ٢٣٥٧ | ١٩٨٧ | ١٥٨٣ | ١٢٢٣ | ٠٨٦٣ | ٠٥٤١ | ٠٢٢٩ |

with “authentic” Arabic numerals. One simply uses wyde characters instead of bytes, translating the English title and then substituting Arabic-Indic digits #0660–#0669 for the ASCII digits #30–#39. (Arabic script is written from right to left, but numbers still appear with their least significant digits at the right. The bidirectional presentation rules of Unicode automatically take care of the necessary reversals when the output is formatted.) What changes to Program P will accomplish this?

- ▶ 14. [21] Change Program P so that it uses floating point arithmetic for the divisibility test in step P6. (The **FREM** instruction always gives an exact result.) Use  $\sqrt{n}$  instead of  $q$  in step P7. Do these changes increase or decrease the running time?
- ▶ 15. [22] What does the following program do? (Do not run it on a computer, figure it out by hand!)

```
* Mystery Program
a      GREG    '*'
b      GREG    ' '
c      GREG    Data_Segment
      LOC      #100
Main   NEG      $1,1,75
      SET      $2,0
2H     ADD      $3,$1,75
3H     STB      b,c,$2
      ADD      $2,$2,1
```

```

SUB    $3,$3,1
PBP    $3,3B
STB    a,c,$2
INCL   $2,1
INCL   $1,1
PBN    $1,2B
SET    $255,c; TRAP 0,Fputs,StdOut
TRAP   0,Halt,0 █

```

16. [46] MMIXAL was designed with simplicity and efficiency in mind, so that people can easily prepare machine language programs for MMIX when those programs are relatively short. Longer programs are usually written in a higher-level language like C or Java, ignoring details at the machine level. But sometimes there is a need to write large-scale programs specifically for a particular machine, and to have precise control over each instruction. In such cases we ought to have a machine-oriented language with a much richer structure than the line-for-line approach of a traditional assembler.

Design and implement a language called PL/MMIX, which is analogous to Niklaus Wirth's PL/360 language [*JACM* **15** (1968), 37–74]. Your language should also incorporate the ideas of literate programming [D. E. Knuth, *Literate Programming* (1992)].

### EXERCISES — Second set

The next exercises are short programming problems, representing typical computer applications and covering a wide range of techniques. Every reader is encouraged to choose a few of these problems in order to get some experience using MMIX, as well as to practice basic programming skills. If desired, these exercises may be worked concurrently as the rest of Chapter 1 is being read. The following list indicates the types of programming techniques that are involved:

- The use of switching tables for multiway decisions: exercise 17.
- Computation with two-dimensional arrays: exercises 18, 28, and 35.
- Text and string manipulation: exercises 24, 25, and 35.
- Integer and scaled decimal arithmetic: exercises 21, 27, 30, and 32.
- Elementary floating point arithmetic: exercises 27 and 32.
- The use of subroutines: exercises 23, 24, 32, 33, 34, and 35.
- List processing: exercise 29.
- Real-time control: exercise 34.
- Typographic display: exercise 35.
- Loop and pipeline optimization: exercises 23 and 26.

Whenever an exercise in this book says “write an MMIX program” or “write an MMIX subroutine,” you need only write symbolic MMIXAL code for what is asked. This code will not be complete in itself; it will merely be a fragment of a (hypothetical) complete program. No input or output need be done in a code fragment, if the data is to be supplied externally; one need write only LABEL, OP, and EXPR fields of MMIXAL instructions, together with appropriate remarks. The numeric machine language, line number, and “Times” columns (see Program M) are not required unless specifically requested, nor will there be a Main label.

On the other hand, if an exercise says “write a *complete* MMIX program,” it implies that an executable program should be written in MMIXAL, including in particular the Main label. Such programs should preferably be tested with the help of an MMIX assembler and simulator.

- **17.** [25] Register \$0 contains the address of a tetrabyte that purportedly is a valid, unprivileged MMIX instruction. (This means that  $\$0 \geq 0$  and that the X, Y, and Z bytes of  $M_4[\$0]$  obey all restrictions imposed by the OP byte, according to the rules of Section 1.3.1'. For example, a valid instruction with opcode **FIX** will have  $Y \leq \text{ROUND\_NEAR}$ ; a valid instruction with opcode **PUT** will have  $Y = 0$  and either  $X < 8$  or  $18 < X < 32$ . The opcode **LDVTS** is always privileged, for use by the operating system only. But most opcodes define instructions that are valid and unprivileged for all X, Y, and Z.) Write an MMIX subroutine that checks the given tetrabyte for validity in this sense; try to make your program as efficient as possible.

*Note:* Inexperienced programmers tend to tackle a problem like this by writing a long series of tests on the OP byte, such as “**SR op,tetra,24; CMP t,op,#18; BN t,1F; CMP t,op,#98; BN t,2F; ...**”. This is *not* good practice! The best way to make multiway decisions is to prepare an auxiliary *table* containing information that encapsulates the desired logic. For example, a table of 256 octabytes, one for each opcode, could be accessed by saying “**SR t,tetra,21; LDO t,Table,t**”, followed perhaps by a **GO** instruction if many different kinds of actions need to be done. A tabular approach often makes a program dramatically faster and more flexible.

- **18.** [31] Assume that a  $9 \times 8$  matrix of signed one-byte elements

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} & \dots & a_{18} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} & \dots & a_{28} \\ \vdots & & & & \vdots \\ a_{91} & a_{92} & a_{93} & \dots & a_{98} \end{pmatrix}$$

has been stored so that  $a_{ij}$  is in location  $A + 8i + j$  for some constant **A**. The matrix therefore appears as follows in MMIX's memory:

$$\begin{pmatrix} M[A+9] & M[A+10] & M[A+11] & \dots & M[A+16] \\ M[A+17] & M[A+18] & M[A+19] & \dots & M[A+24] \\ \vdots & & & & \vdots \\ M[A+73] & M[A+74] & M[A+75] & \dots & M[A+80] \end{pmatrix}.$$

An  $m \times n$  matrix is said to have a “saddle point” if some position is the smallest value in its row and the largest value in its column. In symbols,  $a_{ij}$  is a saddle point if

$$a_{ij} = \min_{1 \leq k \leq n} a_{ik} = \max_{1 \leq k \leq m} a_{kj}.$$

Write an MMIX program that computes the location of a saddle point (if there is at least one) or zero (if there is no saddle point), and puts this value in register \$0.

- 19.** [M29] What is the *probability* that the matrix in the preceding exercise has a saddle point, assuming that the 72 elements are distinct and assuming that all  $72!$  permutations are equally likely? What is the corresponding probability if we assume instead that the elements of the matrix are zeros and ones, and that all  $2^{72}$  such matrices are equally likely?

- 20.** [HM42] Two solutions are given for exercise 18 (see page 102), and a third is suggested; it is not clear which of them is better. Analyze the algorithms, using each of the assumptions of exercise 19, and decide which is the better method.

**21.** [25] The ascending sequence of all reduced fractions between 0 and 1 that have denominators  $\leq n$  is called the “Farey series of order  $n$ .” For example, the Farey series of order 7 is

$$\frac{0}{1}, \frac{1}{7}, \frac{1}{6}, \frac{1}{5}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{2}{7}, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{5}, \frac{3}{7}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{4}{7}, \frac{3}{5}, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{5}{7}, \frac{3}{4}, \frac{5}{6}, \frac{6}{7}, \frac{1}{1}.$$

If we denote this series by  $x_0/y_0, x_1/y_1, x_2/y_2, \dots$ , exercise 22 proves that

$$\begin{aligned} x_0 &= 0, & y_0 &= 1; & x_1 &= 1, & y_1 &= n; \\ x_{k+2} &= \lfloor (y_k + n)/y_{k+1} \rfloor x_{k+1} - x_k; \\ y_{k+2} &= \lfloor (y_k + n)/y_{k+1} \rfloor y_{k+1} - y_k. \end{aligned}$$

Write an MMIX subroutine that computes the Farey series of order  $n$ , by storing the values of  $x_k$  and  $y_k$  in tetrabytes  $\mathbf{X} + 4k$  and  $\mathbf{Y} + 4k$ , respectively. (The total number of terms in the series is approximately  $3n^2/\pi^2$ ; thus we may assume that  $n < 2^{32}$ .)

**22.** [M30] (a) Show that the numbers  $x_k$  and  $y_k$  defined by the recurrence in the preceding exercise satisfy the relation  $x_{k+1}y_k - x_ky_{k+1} = 1$ . (b) Show that the fractions  $x_k/y_k$  are indeed the Farey series of order  $n$ , using the fact proved in (a).

**23.** [25] Write an MMIX subroutine that sets  $n$  consecutive bytes of memory to zero, given a starting address in  $\$0$  and an integer  $n \geq 0$  in  $\$1$ . Try to make your subroutine blazingly fast, when  $n$  is large; use an MMIX pipeline simulator to obtain realistic running-time statistics.

- **24.** [30] Write an MMIX subroutine that copies a string, starting at the address in  $\$0$ , to bytes of memory starting at the address in  $\$1$ . Strings are terminated by null characters (that is, bytes equal to zero). Assume that there will be no overlap in memory between the string and its copy. Your routine should minimize the number of memory references by loading and storing eight bytes at a time when possible, so that long strings are copied efficiently. Compare your program to the trivial byte-at-a-time code

```
SUBU $1,$1,$0; 1H LDBU $2,$0,0; STBU $2,$0,$1; INCL $0,1; PBNZ $2,1B
```

which takes  $(2n + 2)\mu + (4n + 7)v$  to copy a string of length  $n$ .

**25.** [26] A cryptanalyst wants to count how often each character occurs in a long string of ciphertext. Write an MMIX program that computes 255 frequency counts, one for each nonnull character; the first null byte ends the given string. Try for a solution that is efficient in terms of the “mems and oops” criteria of Table 1 in Section 1.3.1'.

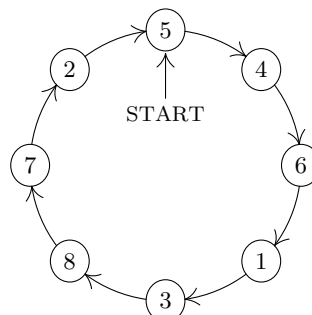
- **26.** [32] Improve the solution to the previous exercise by optimizing its performance with respect to realistic configurations of the MMIX pipeline simulator.

**27.** [26] (*Fibonacci approximations.*) Equation 1.2.8–(15) states that the formula  $F_n = \text{round}(\phi^n/\sqrt{5})$  holds for all  $n \geq 0$ , where ‘round’ denotes rounding to the nearest integer. (a) Write a complete MMIX program to test how well this formula behaves with respect to floating point arithmetic: Compute straightforward approximations to  $\phi^n/\sqrt{5}$  for  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ , and find the smallest  $n$  for which the approximation does not round to  $F_n$ . (b) Exercise 1.2.8–28 proves that  $F_n = \text{round}(\phi F_{n-1})$  for all  $n \geq 3$ . Find the smallest  $n \geq 3$  for which this equation fails when we compute  $\phi F_{n-1}$  approximately by *fixed point* multiplication of unsigned octabytes. (See Eq. 1.3.1'–(7).)

**28.** [26] A *magic square of order  $n$*  is an arrangement of the numbers 1 through  $n^2$  in a square array in such a way that the sum of each row and column is  $n(n^2 + 1)/2$ , and so is the sum of the two main diagonals. Figure 16 shows a magic square of order 7.

|    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 22 | 47 | 16 | 41 | 10 | 35 | 04 |
| 05 | 23 | 48 | 17 | 42 | 11 | 29 |
| 30 | 06 | 24 | 49 | 18 | 36 | 12 |
| 13 | 31 | 07 | 25 | 43 | 19 | 37 |
| 38 | 14 | 32 | 01 | 26 | 44 | 20 |
| 21 | 39 | 08 | 33 | 02 | 27 | 45 |
| 46 | 15 | 40 | 09 | 34 | 03 | 28 |

**Fig. 16.** A magic square.



**Fig. 17.** Josephus's problem,  $n = 8$ ,  $m = 4$ .

Using memory allocated in a fashion like that of exercise 18, write a complete MMIX program to generate a  $19 \times 19$  magic square by the method above, and to format the result in the standard output file. [This algorithm is due to Ibn al-Haytham, who was born in Basra about 965 and died in Cairo about 1040. Many other magic square constructions make good programming exercises; see W. W. Rouse Ball, *Mathematical Recreations and Essays*, revised by H. S. M. Coxeter (New York: Macmillan, 1939), Chapter 7.]

[illegible]

More precisely, let  $r_n(x)$  be the number  $x$  rounded to  $n$  decimal places, rounding to an even digit in case of ties. For the purposes of this problem we can use the formula  $r_n(x) = \lceil 10^n x - \frac{1}{2} \rceil / 10^n$ . Then we wish to find

$$S_n = r_n(1) + r_n\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) + r_n\left(\frac{1}{3}\right) + \cdots;$$

we know that  $S_1 = 3.7$ , and the problem is to write a complete **MMIX** program that calculates and prints  $S_n$  for  $1 \leq n \leq 10$ .

*Note:* There is a much faster way to do this than the simple procedure of adding  $r_n(1/m)$ , one number at a time, until  $r_n(1/m)$  becomes zero. For example, we have  $r_5(1/m) = 0.00001$  for all values of  $m$  from 66667 to 199999; it's wise to avoid calculating  $1/m$  all 133333 times! An algorithm along the following lines is better.

**H1.** Start with  $m_1 = 1$ ,  $S \leftarrow 1$ ,  $k \leftarrow 1$ .

**H2.** Calculate  $r \leftarrow r_n(1/(m_k + 1))$ , and stop if  $r = 0$ .

**H3.** Find  $m_{k+1}$ , the largest  $m$  for which  $r_n(1/m) = r$ .

**H4.** Set  $S \leftarrow S + (m_{k+1} - m_k)r$ ,  $k \leftarrow k + 1$ , and return to H2. ■

**31.** [HM30] Using the notation of the preceding exercise, prove or disprove the formula

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (S_{n+1} - S_n) = \ln 10.$$

► **32.** [31] The following algorithm, due to the Neapolitan astronomer Aloysius Lilius and the German Jesuit mathematician Christopher Clavius in the late 16th century, is used by most Western churches to determine the date of Easter Sunday for any year after 1582.

**Algorithm E** (*Date of Easter*). Let  $Y$  be the year for which Easter date is desired.

**E1.** [Golden number.] Set  $G \leftarrow (Y \bmod 19) + 1$ . ( $G$  is the so-called “golden number” of the year in the 19-year Metonic cycle.)

**E2.** [Century.] Set  $C \leftarrow \lfloor Y/100 \rfloor + 1$ . (When  $Y$  is not a multiple of 100,  $C$  is the century number; for example, 1984 is in the twentieth century.)

**E3.** [Corrections.] Set  $X \leftarrow \lfloor 3C/4 \rfloor - 12$ ,  $Z \leftarrow \lfloor (8C + 5)/25 \rfloor - 5$ . (Here  $X$  is the number of years, such as 1900, in which leap year was dropped in order to keep in step with the sun;  $Z$  is a special correction designed to synchronize Easter with the moon's orbit.)

**E4.** [Find Sunday.] Set  $D \leftarrow \lfloor 5Y/4 \rfloor - X - 10$ . (March  $((-D) \bmod 7)$  will actually be a Sunday.)

**E5.** [Epact.] Set  $E \leftarrow (11G + 20 + Z - X) \bmod 30$ . If  $E = 25$  and the golden number  $G$  is greater than 11, or if  $E = 24$ , increase  $E$  by 1. (This number  $E$  is the *epact*, which specifies when a full moon occurs.)

**E6.** [Find full moon.] Set  $N \leftarrow 44 - E$ . If  $N < 21$  then set  $N \leftarrow N + 30$ . (Easter is supposedly the first Sunday following the first full moon that occurs on or after March 21. Actually perturbations in the moon's orbit do not make this strictly true, but we are concerned here with the “calendar moon” rather than the actual moon. The  $N$ th of March is a calendar full moon.)

**E7.** [Advance to Sunday.] Set  $N \leftarrow N + 7 - ((D + N) \bmod 7)$ .

**E8.** [Get month.] If  $N > 31$ , the date is  $(N - 31)$  APRIL; otherwise the date is  $N$  MARCH. ■

Write a subroutine to calculate and print Easter date given the year, assuming that the year is less than 100000. The output should have the form “ $dd$  MONTH,  $yyyy$ ” where  $dd$  is the day and  $yyyy$  is the year. Write a complete MMIX program that uses this subroutine to prepare a table of the dates of Easter from 1950 through 2000.

**33.** [M30] Some computers — not MMIX! — give a negative remainder when a negative number is divided by a positive number. Therefore a program for calculating the date of Easter by the algorithm in the previous exercise might fail when the quantity  $(11G + 20 + Z - X)$  in step E5 is negative. For example, in the year 14250 we obtain  $G = 1$ ,  $X = 95$ ,  $Z = 40$ ; so if we had  $E = -24$  instead of  $E = +6$  we would get

the ridiculous answer “42 APRIL”. [See *CACM* 5 (1962), 556.] Write a complete MMIX program that finds the *earliest* year for which this error would actually cause the wrong date to be calculated for Easter.

- 34. [33] Assume that an MMIX computer has been wired up to the traffic signals at the corner of Del Mar Boulevard and Berkeley Avenue, via special “files” named `/dev/lights` and `/dev/sensor`. The computer activates the lights by outputting one byte to `/dev/lights`, specifying the sum of four two-bit codes as follows:

Del Mar traffic light: #00 off, #40 green, #80 amber, #c0 red;  
 Berkeley traffic light: #00 off, #10 green, #20 amber, #30 red;  
 Del Mar pedestrian light: #00 off, #04 WALK, #0c DON'T WALK;  
 Berkeley pedestrian light: #00 off, #01 WALK, #03 DON'T WALK.

Cars or pedestrians wishing to travel on Berkeley across the boulevard must activate a sensor; if this condition never occurs, the light for Del Mar should remain green. When MMIX reads a byte from `/dev/sensor`, the input is nonzero if and only if the sensor has been activated since the previous input.

Cycle times are as follows:

Del Mar traffic light is green  $\geq 30$  sec, amber 8 sec;  
 Berkeley traffic light is green 20 sec, amber 5 sec.

When a traffic light is green or amber for one direction, the other direction has a red light. When the traffic light is green, the corresponding WALK light is on, except that DON'T WALK flashes for 12 sec just before a green light turns to amber, as follows:

DON'T WALK  $\frac{1}{2}$  sec } repeat 8 times;  
 off  $\frac{1}{2}$  sec }  
 DON'T WALK 4 sec (and remains on through amber and red cycles).

If the sensor is activated while the Berkeley light is green, the car or pedestrian will pass on that cycle. But if it is activated during the amber or red portions, another cycle will be necessary after the Del Mar traffic has passed.

Write a complete MMIX program that controls these lights, following the stated protocol. Assume that the special clock register rC increases by 1 exactly  $\rho$  times per second, where the integer  $\rho$  is a given constant.

35. [37] This exercise is designed to give some experience in the many applications of computers for which the output is to be displayed graphically rather than in the usual tabular form. The object is to “draw” a crossword puzzle diagram.

You are given as input a matrix of zeros and ones. An entry of zero indicates a white square; a one indicates a black square. The output should generate a diagram of the puzzle, with the appropriate squares numbered for words across and down.

For example, given the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix},$$

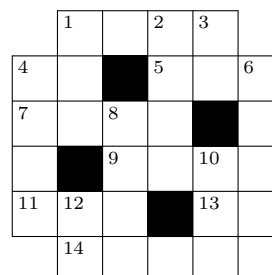


Fig. 18. Diagram corresponding to the matrix in exercise 35.

the corresponding puzzle diagram would be as shown in Fig. 18. A square is numbered if it is a white square and either (a) the square below it is white and there is no white square immediately above, or (b) the square to its right is white and there is no white square immediately to its left. If black squares occur at the edges, they should be removed from the diagram. This is illustrated in Fig. 18, where the black squares at the corners were dropped. A simple way to accomplish this is to artificially insert rows and columns of  $-1$ 's at the top, bottom, and sides of the given input matrix, then to change every  $+1$  that is adjacent to a  $-1$  into a  $-1$  until no  $+1$  remains next to any  $-1$ .

Figure 18 was produced by the METAPOST program shown in Fig. 19. Simple changes to the uses of `line` and `black`, and to the coordinates in the `for` loop, will produce any desired diagram.

Write a complete MMIX program that reads a  $25 \times 25$  matrix of zeros and ones in the standard input file and writes a suitable METAPOST program on the standard output file. The input should consist of 25 lines, each consisting of 25 digits followed by "newline"; for example, the first line corresponding to the matrix above would be '100001111111111111111111', using extra 1s to extend the original  $6 \times 6$  array. The diagram will not necessarily be symmetrical, and it might have long paths of black squares that are connected to the outside in strange ways.


```

beginfig(18)
transform t; t=identity rotated -90 scaled 17pt;
def line(expr i,j,ii,jj) =
  draw ((i,j)--(ii,jj)) transformed t;
enddef;
def black(expr i,j) =
  fill ((i,j)--(i+1,j)--(i+1,j+1)--(i,j+1)--cycle) transformed t;
enddef;
line (1,2,1,6); line (2,1,2,7); line (3,1,3,7); line (4,1,4,7);
line (5,1,5,7); line (6,1,6,7); line (7,2,7,6);
line (2,1,6,1); line (1,2,7,2); line (1,3,7,3); line (1,4,7,4);
line (1,5,7,5); line (1,6,7,6); line (2,7,6,7);
numeric n; n=0;
for p = (1,2),(1,4),(1,5), (2,1),(2,4),(2,6),
  (3,1),(3,3), (4,3),(4,5), (5,1),(5,2),(5,5), (6,2):
  n:=n+1; label.lrt(decimal n infont "cmr8", p transformed t);
endfor
black(2,3); black(3,5); black(4,2); black(5,4);
endfig;

```

Fig. 19. The METAPOST program that generated Fig. 18.

### 1.3.3'. Applications to Permutations

 The MIX programs in the former Section 1.3.3 will all be converted to MMIX programs, and so will the MIX programs in Chapters 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6. Anyone who wishes to help with this instructive conversion project is invited to join the MMIXmasters (see page v).



## 1.4'. SOME FUNDAMENTAL PROGRAMMING TECHNIQUES

### 1.4.1'. Subroutines

WHEN A CERTAIN task is to be performed at several different places in a program, we usually don't want to repeat the coding over and over. To avoid this situation, the coding (called a *subroutine*) can be put into one place only, and a few extra instructions can be added to restart the main routine properly after the subroutine is finished. Transfer of control between subroutines and main programs is called *subroutine linkage*.

Each machine has its own peculiar way to achieve efficient subroutine linkage, usually by using special instructions. Our discussion will be based on MMIX machine language, but similar remarks will apply to subroutine linkage on most other general-purpose computers.

Subroutines are used to save space in a program. They do not save any time, other than the time implicitly saved by having less space—for example, less time to load the program, and better use of high-speed memory on machines with several grades of memory. The extra time taken to enter and leave a subroutine is usually negligible, except in critical innermost loops.

Subroutines have several other advantages. They make it easier to visualize the structure of a large and complex program; they form a logical segmentation of the entire problem, and this usually makes debugging of the program easier. Many subroutines have additional value because they can be used by people other than the programmer of the subroutine.

Most computer installations have built up a large library of useful subroutines, and such a library greatly facilitates the programming of standard computer applications that arise. A programmer should not think of this as the *only* purpose of subroutines, however; subroutines should not always be regarded as general-purpose programs to be used by the community. Special-purpose subroutines are just as important, even when they are intended to appear in only one program. Section 1.4.3' contains several typical examples.

The simplest subroutines are those that have only one entrance and one exit, such as the **Maximum** subroutine we have already considered (see Program M in Section 1.3.2' and exercise 1.3.2'–3). Let's look at that program again, recasting it slightly so that a fixed number of cells, 100, is searched for the maximum:

```

* Maximum of X[1..100]
j IS $0 ;m IS $1 ;kk IS $2 ;xk IS $3
Max100 SETL    kk,100*8  M1. Initialize.
          LDO     m,x0,kk
          JMP     1F
3H        LDO     xk,x0,kk  M3. Compare.
          CMP     t,xk,m
          PBNP    t,5F
4H        SET     m,xk      M4. Change m.
1H        SR      j,kk,3
5H        SUB     kk,kk,8   M5. Decrease k.
          PBP     kk,3B     M2. All tested?
6H        POP     2,0       Return to main program.  █

```

(1)

This subroutine is assumed to be part of a larger program in which the symbol `t` has been defined to stand for register `$255`, and the symbol `x0` has been defined to stand for a global register such that  $X[k]$  appears in location  $x0 + 8k$ . In that larger program, the single instruction “`PUSHJ $1,Max100`” will cause register `$1` to be set to the current maximum value of  $\{X[1], \dots, X[100]\}$ , and the position of the maximum will appear in `$2`. Linkage in this case is achieved by the `PUSHJ` instruction that invokes the subroutine, together with “`POP 2,0`” at the subroutine’s end. These `MMIX` instructions cause local registers to be renumbered while the subroutine is active; furthermore, the `PUSHJ` inserts a return address into special register `rJ`, and the `POP` jumps to this location.

We can also accomplish subroutine linkage in a simpler, rather different way, by using `MMIX`’s `GO` instruction instead of pushing and popping. We might, for instance, use the following code in place of (1):

```

* Maximum of X[1..100]
j GREG ;m GREG ;kk GREG ;xk GREG
      GREG      @      Base address
GoMax100 SETL    kk,100*8 M1. Initialize.
      LDO      m,x0,kk
      JMP      1F
3H      ...      (Continue as in (1))
      PBP      kk,3B M2. All tested?
6H      GO      kk,$0,0 Return to main program. █

```

(2)

Now the instruction “`GO $0,GoMax100`” will transfer control to the subroutine, placing the address of the following instruction into `$0`; the subsequent “`GO kk,$0,0`” at the subroutine’s end will return to this address. In this case the maximum value will appear in global register `m`, and its location will be in global register `j`. Two additional global registers, `kk` and `xk`, have also been set aside for use by this subroutine. Furthermore, the “`GREG @`” provides a base address so that we can `GO` to `GoMax100` in a single instruction; otherwise a two-step sequence like “`GETA $0,GoMax100; GO $0,$0,0`” would be necessary. Subroutine linkage like (2) is commonly used on machines that have no built-in register stack mechanism.

It is not hard to obtain *quantitative* statements about the amount of code saved and the amount of time lost when subroutines are used. Suppose that a piece of coding requires  $k$  tetrabytes and that it appears in  $m$  places in the program. Rewriting this as a subroutine, we need a `PUSHJ` or `GO` instruction in each of the  $m$  places where the subroutine is called, plus a single `POP` or `GO` instruction to return control. This gives a total of  $m + k + 1$  tetrabytes, rather than  $mk$ , so the amount saved is

$$(m - 1)(k - 1) - 2. \quad (3)$$

If  $k$  is 1 or  $m$  is 1 we cannot possibly save any space by using subroutines; this, of course, is obvious. If  $k$  is 2,  $m$  must be greater than 3 in order to gain, etc.

The amount of time lost is the time taken for the `PUSHJ`, `POP`, and/or `GO` instructions in the linkage. If the subroutine is invoked  $t$  times during a run of the

program, and if we assume that running time is governed by the approximations in Table 1.3.1'-1, the extra cost is  $4tv$  in case (1), or  $6tv$  in case (2).

These estimates must be taken with a grain of salt, because they were given for an idealized situation. Many subroutines cannot be called simply with a single PUSHJ or GO instruction. Furthermore, if code is replicated in many parts of a program without using a subroutine approach, each instance can be customized to take advantage of special characteristics of the particular part of the program in which it lies. With a subroutine, on the other hand, the code must be written for the most general case; this will often add several additional instructions.

When a subroutine is written to handle a general case, it is expressed in terms of *parameters*. Parameters are values that govern a subroutine's actions; they are subject to change from one call of the subroutine to another.

The coding in the outside program that transfers control to a subroutine and gets it properly started is known as the *calling sequence*. Particular values of parameters, supplied when the subroutine is called, are known as *arguments*. With our GoMax100 subroutine, the calling sequence is simply "GO \$0,GoMax100", but a longer calling sequence is generally necessary when arguments must be supplied.

For example, we might want to generalize (2) to a subroutine that finds the maximum of the first  $n$  elements of an array, given *any* constant  $n$ , by placing  $n$  in the instruction stream with the two-step calling sequence

$$\text{GO } \$0, \text{GoMax}; \quad \text{TETRA } n. \quad (4)$$

The GoMax subroutine could then take the form

$$\begin{array}{llll} * \text{ Maximum of } X[1..n] \\ j \text{ GREG ;m GREG ;kk GREG ;xk GREG} \\ \text{GREG} & @ & \text{Base address} \\ \text{GoMax} & \text{LDT} & \text{kk}, \$0, 0 & \text{Fetch the argument.} \\ & \text{SL} & \text{kk}, \text{kk}, 3 & \\ & \text{LDO} & \text{m}, \text{x0}, \text{kk} & \\ & \text{JMP} & 1\text{F} & \\ 3\text{H} & \dots & & \text{(Continue as in (1))} \\ & \text{PBP} & \text{kk}, 3\text{B} & \\ 6\text{H} & \text{GO} & \text{kk}, \$0, 4 & \text{Return to caller. } \blacksquare \end{array} \quad (5)$$

Still better would be to communicate the parameter  $n$  by putting it into a register. We could, for example, use the two-step calling sequence

$$\text{SET } \$1, n; \quad \text{GO } \$0, \text{GoMax} \quad (6)$$

together with a subroutine of the form

$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{GoMax} & \text{SL} & \text{kk}, \$1, 3 & \text{Fetch the argument.} \\ & \text{LDO} & \text{m}, \text{x0}, \text{kk} & \\ & \dots & & \\ 6\text{H} & \text{GO} & \text{kk}, \$0, 0 & \text{Return. } \blacksquare \end{array} \quad (7)$$

This variation is faster than (5), and it allows  $n$  to vary dynamically without modifying the instruction stream.

Notice that the address of array element  $X[0]$  is also essentially a parameter to subroutines (1), (2), (5), and (7). The operation of putting this address into register  $x0$  may be regarded as part of the calling sequence, in cases when the array is different each time.

If the calling sequence occupies  $c$  tetrabytes of memory, formula (3) for the amount of space saved changes to

$$(m - 1)(k - c) - \text{constant} \quad (8)$$

and the time lost for subroutine linkage is slightly increased.

A further correction to the formulas above can be necessary because certain registers might need to be saved and restored. For example, in the **GoMax** subroutine we must remember that by writing “**SET \$1, n; GO \$0, GoMax**” we are not only computing the maximum value in register  $m$  and its position in register  $j$ , we are also changing the values of global registers  $kk$  and  $xk$ . We have implemented (2), (5), and (7) with the implicit assumption that registers  $kk$  and  $xk$  are for the exclusive use of the maximum-finding routine, but many computers are not blessed with a large number of registers. Even **MMIX** will run out of registers if a lot of subroutines are present simultaneously. We might therefore want to revise (7) so that it will work with  $kk \equiv \$2$  and  $xk \equiv \$3$ , say, without clobbering the contents of those registers. We could do this by writing

|       |      |    |      |          |    |     |     |    |     |                                     |
|-------|------|----|------|----------|----|-----|-----|----|-----|-------------------------------------|
| j     | GREG | ;m | GREG | ;kk      | IS | \$2 | ;xk | IS | \$3 |                                     |
|       |      |    | GREG | @        |    |     |     |    |     | Base address                        |
| GoMax | STO  |    | kk   | ,Tempkk  |    |     |     |    |     | Save previous register contents.    |
|       | STO  |    | xk   | ,Tempxk  |    |     |     |    |     |                                     |
|       | SL   |    | kk   | , \$1, 3 |    |     |     |    |     | Fetch the argument.                 |
|       | LDO  |    | m    | , x0, kk |    |     |     |    |     |                                     |
|       | ...  |    |      |          |    |     |     |    |     |                                     |
|       | LDO  |    | kk   | ,Tempkk  |    |     |     |    |     | Restore previous register contents. |
|       | LDO  |    | xk   | ,Tempxk  |    |     |     |    |     |                                     |
| 6H    | GO   |    | \$0  | , \$0, 0 |    |     |     |    |     | Return. ■                           |

and by setting aside two octabytes called **Tempkk** and **Tempxk** in the data segment. Of course this change adds potentially significant overhead cost to each use of the subroutine.

A subroutine may be regarded as an *extension* of the computer's machine language. For example, whenever the **GoMax** subroutine is present in memory we have a single machine instruction (namely, “**GO \$0, GoMax**”) that is a maximum-finder. It is important to define the effect of each subroutine just as carefully as the machine language operators themselves have been defined; a programmer should therefore be sure to write down the relevant characteristics, even though nobody else will be making use of the routine or its specification. In the case of **GoMax** as given in (7) or (9), the characteristics are as follows:

|                   |                                               |      |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------|------|
| Calling sequence: | <b>GO \$0, GoMax.</b>                         |      |
| Entry conditions: | $\$1 = n \geq 1$ ; $x0$ = address of $X[0]$ . | (10) |
| Exit conditions:  | $m = \max_{1 \leq k \leq n} X[k] = X[j]$ .    |      |

A specification should mention all changes to quantities that are external to the subroutine. If registers `kk` and `xk` are not considered “private” to the variant of `GoMax` in (7), we should include the fact that those registers are affected, as part of that subroutine’s exit conditions. The subroutine also changes register `t`, namely register `$255`; but that register is conventionally used for temporary quantities of only momentary significance, so we needn’t bother to list it explicitly.

Now let’s consider *multiple entrances* to subroutines. Suppose we have a program that requires the general subroutine `GoMax`, but it usually wants to use the special case `GoMax100` in which  $n = 100$ . The two can be combined as follows:

```
GoMax100 SET $1,100   First entrance
GoMax    ...          Second entrance; continue as in (7) or (9).  █ (11)
```

We could also add a *third* entrance, say `GoMax50`, by putting the code

```
GoMax50 SET $1,50;   JMP GoMax
```

in some convenient place.

A subroutine might also have *multiple exits*, meaning that it is supposed to return to one of several different locations, depending on conditions that it has detected. For example, we can extend subroutine (11) yet again by assuming that an upper bound parameter is given in global register `b`; the subroutine is now supposed to exit to one of the two tetrabytes following the `GO` instruction that calls it:

|                                         |                                         |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Calling sequence for general $n$        | Calling sequence for $n = 100$          |
| SET \$1, $n$ ; GO \$0,GoMax             | GO \$0,GoMax100                         |
| Exit here if $m \leq 0$ or $m \geq b$ . | Exit here if $m \leq 0$ or $m \geq b$ . |
| Exit here if $0 < m < b$ .              | Exit here if $0 < m < b$ .              |

(In other words, we skip the tetrabyte after the `GO` when the maximum value is positive and less than the upper bound. A subroutine like this would be useful in a program that often needs to make such distinctions after computing a maximum value.) The implementation is easy:

```
* Maximum of X[1..n] with bounds check
j GREG ;m GREG ;kk GREG ;xk GREG
      GREG    @      Base address
GoMax100 SET    $1,100 Entrance for  $n = 100$ 
GoMax    SL     kk,$1,3 Entrance for general  $n$ 
      LDO     m,x0,kk
      JMP     1F
3H      ...          (Continue as in (1))
      PBP     kk,3B
      BNP     m,1F    Branch if  $m \leq 0$ .
      CMP     kk,m,b
      BN      kk,2F    Branch if  $m < b$ .
1H      GO     kk,$0,0 Take first exit if  $m \leq 0$  or  $m \geq b$ .
2H      GO     kk,$0,4 Otherwise take second exit.  █ (12)
```

Notice that this program combines the instruction-stream linking technique of (5) with the register-setting technique of (7). The location to which a subroutine exits is, strictly speaking, a parameter; hence the locations of multiple exits must be supplied as arguments. When a subroutine accesses one of its parameters all the time, the corresponding argument is best passed in a register, but when an argument is constant and not always needed it is best kept in the instruction stream.

Subroutines may call on other subroutines. Indeed, complicated programs often have subroutine calls nested more than five deep. The only restriction that must be followed when using the GO-type linkage described above is that all temporary storage locations and registers must be distinct; thus no subroutine may call on any other subroutine that is (directly or indirectly) calling on it. For example, consider the following scenario:

| [Main program] | [Subroutine A] | [Subroutine B] | [Subroutine C] |      |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|------|
| ⋮              | A ⋮            | B ⋮            | C ⋮            |      |
| GO \$0,A       | GO \$1,B       | GO \$2,C       | GO \$0,A       | (13) |
| ⋮              | ⋮              | ⋮              | ⋮              |      |
|                | GO \$0,\$0,0   | GO \$1,\$1,0   | GO \$2,\$2,0   |      |

If the main program calls A, which calls B, which calls C, and then C calls on A, the address in \$0 referring to the main program is destroyed, and there is no way to return to that program.

**Using a memory stack.** Recursive situations like (13) do not often arise in simple programs, but a great many important applications do have a natural recursive structure. Fortunately there is a straightforward way to avoid interference between subroutine calls, by letting each subroutine keep its local variables on a *stack*. For example, we can set aside a global register called *sp* (the “stack pointer”) and use GO \$0,Sub to invoke each subroutine. If the code for the subroutine has the form

```

Sub  STO  $0,sp,0
      ADD  sp,sp,8
      ...
      SUB  sp,sp,8
      LDO  $0,sp,0
      GO   $0,$0,0

```

(14)

register \$0 will always contain the proper return address; the problem of (13) no longer arises. (Initially we set *sp* to an address in the data segment, following all other memory locations needed.) Moreover, the STO/ADD and SUB/LDO instructions of (14) can be omitted if *Sub* is a so-called *leaf subroutine* — a subroutine that doesn’t call any other subroutines.

A stack can be used to hold parameters and other local variables besides the return addresses stored in (14). Suppose, for example, that subroutine *Sub* needs 20 octabytes of local data, in addition to the return address; then we can

use a scheme like this:

|     |      |           |                                |      |
|-----|------|-----------|--------------------------------|------|
| Sub | STO  | fp,sp,0   | Save the old frame pointer.    |      |
|     | SET  | fp,sp     | Establish a new frame pointer. |      |
|     | INCL | sp,8*22   | Advance the stack pointer.     |      |
|     | STO  | \$0,fp,8  | Save the return address.       |      |
|     | ...  |           |                                | (15) |
|     | LDO  | \$0,fp,8  | Restore the return address.    |      |
|     | SET  | sp,fp     | Restore the stack pointer.     |      |
|     | LDO  | fp,sp,0   | Restore the frame pointer.     |      |
|     | GO   | \$0,\$0,0 | Return to caller.              | ■    |

Here **fp** is a global register called the *frame pointer*. Within the “...” part of the subroutine, local quantity number  $k$  is equivalent to the octabyte in memory location  $\mathbf{fp} + 8k + 8$ , for  $1 \leq k \leq 20$ . The instructions at the beginning are said to “push” local quantities onto the “top” of the stack; the instructions at the end “pop” those quantities off, leaving the stack in the condition it had when the subroutine was entered.

**Using the register stack.** We have discussed **GO**-type subroutine linkage at length because many computers have no better alternative. But **MMIX** has built-in instructions **PUSHJ** and **POP**, which handle subroutine linkage in a more efficient way, avoiding most of the overhead in schemes like (9) and (15). These instructions allow us to keep most parameters and local variables entirely in registers, instead of storing them into a memory stack and loading them again later. With **PUSHJ** and **POP**, most of the details of stack maintenance are done automatically by the machine.

The basic idea is quite simple, once the general idea of a stack is understood. **MMIX** has a *register stack* consisting of octabytes  $S[0], S[1], \dots, S[\tau - 1]$  for some number  $\tau \geq 0$ . The topmost  $L$  octabytes in the stack (namely  $S[\tau - L], S[\tau - L + 1], \dots, S[\tau - 1]$ ) are the current *local registers*  $\$0, \$1, \dots, \$(L - 1)$ ; the other  $\tau - L$  octabytes of the stack are currently inaccessible to the program, and we say they have been “pushed down.” The current number of local registers,  $L$ , is kept in **MMIX**’s special register **rL**, although a programmer rarely needs to know this. Initially  $L = 2$ ,  $\tau = 2$ , and local registers  $\$0$  and  $\$1$  represent the command line as in Program 1.3.2’H.

**MMIX** also has *global registers*, namely  $\$G, \$(G + 1), \dots, \$255$ ; the value of  $G$  is kept in special register **rG**, and we always have  $0 \leq L \leq G \leq 255$ . (In fact, we also always have  $G \geq 32$ .) Global registers are *not* part of the register stack.

Registers that are neither local nor global are called *marginal*. These registers, namely  $\$L, \$(L + 1), \dots, \$(G - 1)$ , have the value zero whenever they are used as input operands to an **MMIX** instruction.

The register stack grows when a marginal register is given a value. This marginal register becomes local, and so do all marginal registers with smaller numbers. For example, if eight local registers are currently in use, the instruction **ADD \$10,\$20,5** causes  $\$8, \$9$ , and  $\$10$  to become local; more precisely, if **rL** = 8, the instruction **ADD \$10,\$20,5** sets  $\$8 \leftarrow 0$ ,  $\$9 \leftarrow 0$ ,  $\$10 \leftarrow 5$ , and **rL**  $\leftarrow$  11. (Register  $\$20$  remains marginal.)

If  $\$X$  is a local register, the instruction `PUSHJ  $\$X$ ,Sub` decreases the number of local registers and changes their effective register numbers: Local registers previously called  $\$(X+1)$ ,  $\$(X+2)$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $\$(L-1)$  are called  $\$0$ ,  $\$1$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $\$(L-X-2)$  inside the subroutine, and the value of  $L$  decreases by  $X+1$ . Thus the register stack remains unchanged, but  $X+1$  of its entries have become inaccessible; the subroutine cannot damage those entries, and it has  $X+1$  newly marginal registers to play with.

If  $X \geq G$ , so that  $\$X$  is a global register, the action of `PUSHJ  $\$X$ ,Sub` is similar, but a new entry is placed on the register stack and then  $L+1$  registers are pushed down instead of  $X+1$ . In this case  $L$  is zero when the subroutine begins; all of the formerly local registers have been pushed down, and the subroutine starts out with a clean slate.

The register stack shrinks only when a `POP` instruction is given, or when a program explicitly decreases the number of local registers with an instruction such as `PUT rL,5`. The purpose of `POP X,YZ` is to make the items pushed down by the most recent `PUSHJ` accessible again, as they were before, and to remove items from the register stack if they are no longer necessary. In general the  $X$  field of a `POP` instruction is the number of values “returned” by the subroutine, if  $X \leq L$ . If  $X > 0$ , the main value returned is  $\$(X-1)$ ; this value is removed from the register stack, together with all entries above it, and the return value is placed in the position specified by the `PUSHJ` command that invoked the subroutine. The behavior of `POP` is similar when  $X > L$ , but in this case the register stack remains intact and zero is placed in the position of the `PUSHJ`.

The rules we have just stated are a bit complicated, because many different cases can arise in practice. A few examples will, however, make everything clear. Suppose we are writing a routine  $A$  and we want to call subroutine  $B$ ; suppose further that routine  $A$  has 5 local registers that should not be accessible to  $B$ . These registers are  $\$0$ ,  $\$1$ ,  $\$2$ ,  $\$3$ , and  $\$4$ . We reserve the next register,  $\$5$ , for the main result of subroutine  $B$ . If  $B$  has, say, three parameters, we set  $\$6 \leftarrow \text{arg0}$ ,  $\$7 \leftarrow \text{arg1}$ , and  $\$8 \leftarrow \text{arg2}$ , then issue the command `PUSHJ  $\$5$ ,B`; this invokes  $B$  and the arguments are now found in  $\$0$ ,  $\$1$ , and  $\$2$ .

If  $B$  returns no result, it will conclude with the command `POP 0,YZ`; this will restore  $\$0$ ,  $\$1$ ,  $\$2$ ,  $\$3$ , and  $\$4$  to their former values and set  $L \leftarrow 5$ .

If  $B$  returns a single result  $x$ , it will place  $x$  in  $\$0$  and conclude with the command `POP 1,YZ`. This will restore  $\$0$ ,  $\$1$ ,  $\$2$ ,  $\$3$ , and  $\$4$  as before; it will also set  $\$5 \leftarrow x$  and  $L \leftarrow 6$ .

If  $B$  returns two results  $x$  and  $a$ , it will place the main result  $x$  in  $\$1$  and the auxiliary result  $a$  in  $\$0$ . Then `POP 2,YZ` will restore  $\$0$  through  $\$4$  and set  $\$5 \leftarrow x$ ,  $\$6 \leftarrow a$ ,  $L \leftarrow 7$ . Similarly, if  $B$  returns ten results  $(x, a_0, \dots, a_8)$ , it will place the main result  $x$  in  $\$9$  and the others in the first nine registers:  $\$0 \leftarrow a_0$ ,  $\$1 \leftarrow a_1$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $\$8 \leftarrow a_8$ . Then `POP 10,YZ` will restore  $\$0$  through  $\$4$  and set  $\$5 \leftarrow x$ ,  $\$6 \leftarrow a_0$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $\$14 \leftarrow a_8$ . (The curious permutation of registers that arises when two or more results are returned may seem strange at first. But it makes sense, because it leaves the register stack unchanged except for the main result. For example, if subroutine  $B$  wants  $\text{arg0}$ ,  $\text{arg1}$ , and  $\text{arg2}$  to reappear in



\$6, \$7, and \$8 after it has finished its work, it can leave them as auxiliary results in \$0, \$1, and \$2 and then say POP 4,YZ.)

The YZ field of a POP instruction is usually zero, but in general the instruction POP X,YZ returns to the instruction that is YZ+1 tetrabytes after the PUSHJ that invoked the current subroutine. This generality is useful for subroutines with multiple exits. More precisely, a PUSHJ subroutine in location @ sets special register rJ to @ + 4 before jumping to the subroutine; a POP instruction then returns to location rJ + 4YZ.

We can now recast the programs previously written with GO linkage so that they use PUSH/POP linkage instead. For example, the two-entrance, two-exit subroutine for maximum-finding in (12) takes the following form when MMIX's register stack mechanism is used:

|                                        |     |          |                                                     |            |        |
|----------------------------------------|-----|----------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------|--------|
| * Maximum of X[1..n] with bounds check |     |          |                                                     |            |        |
| j                                      | IS  | \$0 ;m   | IS \$1 ;kk                                          | IS \$2 ;xk | IS \$3 |
| Max100                                 | SET | \$0,100  | Entrance for $n = 100$                              |            |        |
| Max                                    | SL  | kk,\$0,3 | Entrance for general $n$                            |            |        |
|                                        | LDO | m,x0,kk  |                                                     |            |        |
|                                        | JMP | 1F       |                                                     |            |        |
|                                        | ... |          | (Continue as in (12))                               |            |        |
|                                        | BNZ | kk,2F    |                                                     |            |        |
| 1H                                     | POP | 2,0      | Take first exit if $\max \leq 0$ or $\max \geq b$ . |            |        |
| 2H                                     | POP | 2,1      | Otherwise take second exit. ■                       |            |        |

|                                             |                                             |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Calling sequence for general $n$            | Calling sequence for $n = 100$              |
| SET \$A,n; PUSHJ \$R,Max (A = R+1)          | PUSHJ \$R,Max100                            |
| Exit here if $\$R \leq 0$ or $\$R \geq b$ . | Exit here if $\$R \leq 0$ or $\$R \geq b$ . |
| Exit here if $0 < \$R < b$ .                | Exit here if $0 < \$R < b$ .                |

The local result register \$R in the PUSHJ of this calling sequence is arbitrary, depending on the number of local variables the caller wishes to retain. The local argument register \$A is then  $\$(R + 1)$ . After the call, \$R will contain the main result (the maximum value) and \$A will contain the auxiliary result (the array index of that maximum). If there are several arguments and/or auxiliaries, they are conventionally called A0, A1, ..., and we conventionally assume that  $A0 = R + 1$ ,  $A1 = R + 2$ , ... when PUSH/POP calling sequences are written down.

A comparison of (12) and (16) shows only mild advantages for (16): The new form does not need to allocate global registers for j, m, kk, and xk, nor does it need a global base register for the address of the GO command. (Recall from Section 1.3.1' that GO takes an absolute address, while PUSHJ has a relative address.) A GO instruction is slightly slower than PUSHJ; it is no slower than POP, according to Table 1.3.1'-1, although high-speed implementations of MMIX could implement POP more efficiently. Programs (12) and (16) both have the same length.

The advantages of PUSH/POP linkage over GO linkage begin to manifest themselves when we have *non-leaf* subroutines (namely, subroutines that call other subroutines, possibly themselves). Then the GO-based code of (14) can be re-

placed by

```

Sub  GET  retadd,rJ
      ...
      PUT  rJ,retadd
      POP  X,0

```

(17)

where `retadd` is a local register. (For example, `retadd` might be `$5`; its register number is generally greater than or equal to the number of returned results `X`, so the `POP` instruction will automatically remove it from the register stack.) Now the costly memory references of (14) are avoided.

A non-leaf subroutine with many local variables and/or parameters is significantly better off with a register stack than with the memory stack scheme of (15), because we can often perform the computations entirely in registers. We should note, however, that `MMIX`'s register stack applies only to local variables that are *scalar*, not to local array variables that must be accessed by address computation. Subroutines that need non-scalar local variables should use a scheme like (15) for all such variables, while keeping scalars on the register stack. Both approaches can be used simultaneously, with `fp` and `sp` updated only by subroutines that need a memory stack.

If the register stack becomes extremely large, `MMIX` will automatically store its bottom entries in the stack segment of memory, using a behind-the-scenes procedure that we will study in Section 1.4.3'. (Recall from Section 1.3.2' that the stack segment begins at address `#6000 0000 0000 0000`.) `MMIX` stores register stack items in memory also when a `SAVE` command saves a program's entire current context. Saved stack items are automatically restored from memory when a `POP` command needs them or when an `UNSAVE` command restores a saved context. But in most cases `MMIX` is able to push and pop local registers without actually accessing memory, and without actually changing the contents of very many internal machine registers.

Stacks have many other uses in computer programs; we will study their basic properties in Section 2.2.1. We will get a further taste of nested subroutines and recursive procedures in Section 2.3, when we consider operations on trees. Chapter 8 studies recursion in detail.

**\*Assembly language features.** The `MMIX` assembly language supports the writing of subroutines in three ways that were not mentioned in Section 1.3.2'. The most important of these is the `PREFIX` operation, which makes it easy to define "private" symbols that will not interfere with symbols defined elsewhere in a large program. The basic idea is that a symbol can have a structured form like `Sub:X` (meaning symbol `X` of subroutine `Sub`), possibly carried to several levels like `Lib:Sub:X` (meaning symbol `X` of subroutine `Sub` in library `Lib`).

Structured symbols are accommodated by extending rule 1 of `MMIXAL` in Section 1.3.2' slightly, allowing the colon character `'.'` to be regarded as a "letter" that can be used to construct symbols. Every symbol that does not begin with a colon is implicitly extended by placing the *current prefix* in front of it. The current prefix is initially `':'`, but the user can change it with the

PREFIX command. For example,

|        |                   |                           |                          |
|--------|-------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| ADD    | x,y,z             | means                     | ADD :x,:y,:z             |
| PREFIX | Foo:              | current prefix is         | :Foo:                    |
| ADD    | x,y,z             | means                     | ADD :Foo:x,:Foo:y,:Foo:z |
| PREFIX | Bar:              | current prefix is         | :Foo:Bar:                |
| ADD    | :x,y,:z           | means                     | ADD :x,:Foo:Bar:y,:z     |
| PREFIX | :                 | current prefix reverts to | :                        |
| ADD    | x,Foo:Bar:y,Foo:z | means                     | ADD :x,:Foo:Bar:y,:Foo:z |

One way to use this idea is to replace the opening lines of (16) by

```

PREFIX Max:
j IS $0 ;m IS $1 ;kk IS $2 ;xk IS $3
x0 IS :x0 ;b IS :b ;t IS :t           External symbols
:Max100 SET    $0,100  Entrance for n = 100
:Max    SL     kk,$0,3 Entrance for general n
        LDO    m,x0,kk
        JMP    1F
...
(Continue as in (16))

```

(18)

and to add “PREFIX :” at the end. Then the symbols *j*, *m*, *kk*, and *xk* are free for use in the rest of the program or in the definition of other subroutines. Further examples of the use of prefixes appear in Section 1.4.3'.

MMIXAL also includes a pseudo-operation called LOCAL. The assembly command “LOCAL \$40” means, for example, that an error message should be given at the end of assembly if GREG commands allocate so many registers that \$40 will be global. (This feature is needed only when a subroutine uses more than 32 local registers, because “LOCAL \$31” is always implicitly true.)

A third feature for subroutine support, BSPEC ... ESPEC, is also provided. It allows information to be passed to the object file so that debugging routines and other system programs know what kind of linkage is being used by each subroutine. This feature is discussed in the *MMIXware* document; it is primarily of interest in the output of compilers.

**Strategic considerations.** When ad hoc subroutines are written for special-purpose use, we can afford to use GREG instructions liberally, so that plenty of global registers are filled with basic constants that make our program run fast. Comparatively few local registers are needed, unless the subroutines are used recursively.

But when dozens or hundreds of general-purpose subroutines are written for inclusion in a large library, with the idea of allowing any user program to include whatever subroutines it needs, we obviously can't allow each subroutine to allocate a substantial number of globals. Even one global variable per subroutine might be too much.

Thus we want to use GREG generously when we have only a few subroutines, but we want to use it sparingly when the number of subroutines is potentially huge. In the latter case we probably can make good use of local variables without too much loss of efficiency.

Let's conclude this section by discussing briefly how we might go about writing a complex and lengthy program. How can we decide what kind of subroutines we will need? What calling sequences should be used? One successful way to determine this is to use an iterative procedure:

**Step 0** (Initial idea). First we decide vaguely upon the general plan of attack that the program will use.

**Step 1** (A rough sketch of the program). We start now by writing the "outer levels" of the program, in any convenient language. A somewhat systematic way to go about this has been described very nicely by E. W. Dijkstra, *Structured Programming* (Academic Press, 1972), Chapter 1, and by N. Wirth, *CACM* **14** (1971), 221–227. First we break the whole program into a small number of pieces, which might be thought of temporarily as subroutines although they are called only once. These pieces are successively refined into smaller and smaller parts, having correspondingly simpler jobs to do. Whenever some computational task arises that seems likely to occur elsewhere or that has already occurred elsewhere, we define a subroutine (a real one) to do that job. We do not write the subroutine at this point; we continue writing the main program, assuming that the subroutine has performed its task. Finally, when the main program has been sketched, we tackle the subroutines in turn, trying to take the most complex subroutines first and then their sub-subroutines, etc. In this manner we will come up with a list of subroutines. The actual function of each subroutine has probably already changed several times, so that the first parts of our sketch will by now be incorrect; but that is no problem, since we are merely making a sketch. We now have a reasonably good idea about how each subroutine will be called and how general-purpose it should be. We should consider extending the generality of each subroutine, at least a little.

**Step 2** (First working program). The next step goes in the opposite direction from step 1. We now write in computer language, say MMIXAL or PL/MMIX or — most probably — a higher-level language. We start this time with the lowest level subroutines, and do the main program last. As far as possible, we try never to write any instructions that call a subroutine before the subroutine itself has been coded. (In step 1, we tried the opposite, never considering a subroutine until all of its calls had been written.)

As more and more subroutines are written during this process, our confidence gradually grows, since we are continually extending the power of the machine we are programming. After an individual subroutine is coded, we should immediately prepare a complete description of what it does, and what its calling sequences are, as in (10). It is also important to be sure that global variables are not used for two conflicting purposes at the same time; when preparing the sketch in step 1, we didn't have to worry about such problems.

**Step 3** (Reexamination). The result of step 2 should be very nearly a working program, but we may be able to improve it. A good way is to reverse direction again, studying for each subroutine *all* of the places it is called. Perhaps the subroutine should be enlarged to do some of the more common things that

are always done by the outside routine just before or after the subroutine is called. Perhaps several subroutines should be merged into one; or perhaps a subroutine is called only once and should not be a subroutine at all. Perhaps a subroutine is never called and can be dispensed with entirely.

At this point, it is often a good idea to scrap everything and start over again at step 1, or even at step 0! This is not intended to be a facetious remark; the time spent in getting this far has not been wasted, for we have learned a great deal about the problem. With hindsight, we will probably have discovered several improvements that could be made to the program's overall organization. There's no reason to be afraid to go back to step 1 — it will be much easier to go through steps 2 and 3 again, now that a similar program has been done already. Moreover, we will quite probably save as much debugging time later on as it will take to rewrite everything. Some of the best computer programs ever written owe much of their success to the fact that all the work was unintentionally lost, at about this stage, and the authors were forced to begin again.

On the other hand, there is probably never a point when a complex computer program cannot be improved somehow, so steps 1 and 2 should not be repeated indefinitely. When significant improvements can clearly be made, the additional time required to start over is well spent, but eventually a point of diminishing returns is reached.

**Step 4 (Debugging).** After a final polishing of the program, including perhaps the allocation of storage and other last-minute details, it is time to look at it in still another direction from the three that were used in steps 1, 2, and 3: Now we study the program in the order in which the computer will *perform* it. This may be done by hand or, of course, by machine. The author has found it quite helpful at this point to make use of system routines that trace each instruction the first two times it is executed; it is important to rethink the ideas underlying the program and to check that everything is actually taking place as expected.

Debugging is an art that needs much further study, and the way to approach it is highly dependent on the facilities available at each computer installation. A good start towards effective debugging is often the preparation of appropriate test data. The most successful debugging techniques are typically designed and built into the program itself: Many of today's best programmers devote nearly half of their programs to facilitating the debugging process in the other half. The first half, which usually consists of fairly straightforward routines that display relevant information in a readable format, will eventually be of little importance, but the net result is a surprising gain in productivity.

Another good debugging practice is to keep a record of every mistake made. Even though this will probably be quite embarrassing, such information is invaluable to anyone doing research on the debugging problem, and it will also help you learn how to cope with future errors.

*Note:* The author wrote most of the preceding comments in 1964, after he had successfully completed several medium-sized software projects but before he had developed a mature programming style. Later, during the 1980s, he

learned that an additional technique, called *structured documentation* or *literate programming*, is probably even more important. A summary of his current beliefs about the best way to write programs of all kinds appears in the book *Literate Programming* (Cambridge University Press, first published in 1992). Incidentally, Chapter 11 of that book contains a detailed record of all bugs removed from the T<sub>E</sub>X program during the period 1978–1991.

*Up to a point it is better to let the snags [bugs] be there  
than to spend such time in design that there are none  
(how many decades would this course take?).*

— A. M. TURING, Proposals for ACE (1945)

## EXERCISES

1. [20] Write a subroutine **GoMaxR** that generalizes Algorithm 1.2.10M by finding the maximum value of  $\{X[a], X[a+r], X[a+2r], \dots, X[n]\}$ , where  $r$  and  $n$  are positive parameters and  $a$  is the smallest positive number with  $a \equiv n \pmod{r}$ , namely  $a = 1 + (n-1) \bmod r$ . Give a special entrance **GoMax** for the case  $r = 1$ , using a GO-style calling sequence so that your subroutine is a generalization of (7).
2. [20] Convert the subroutine of exercise 1 from GO linkage to PUSHJ/POP linkage.
3. [15] How can scheme (15) be simplified when Sub is a leaf subroutine?
4. [15] The text in this section speaks often of PUSHJ, but Section 1.3.1' mentions also a command called PUSHGO. What is the difference between PUSHJ and PUSHGO?
5. [0] True or false: The number of marginal registers is  $G - L$ .
6. [10] What is the effect of the instruction **DIVU \$5,\$5,\$5** if \$5 is a marginal register?
7. [10] What is the effect of the instruction **INCML \$5,#abcd** if \$5 is a marginal register?
8. [15] Suppose the instruction **SET \$15,0** is performed when there are 10 local registers. This increases the number of local registers to 16; but the newly local registers (including \$15) are all zero, so they still behave essentially as if they were marginal. Is the instruction **SET \$15,0** therefore entirely redundant in such a case?
9. [20] When a trip interrupt has been enabled for some exceptional condition like arithmetic overflow, the trip handler might be called into action at unpredictable times. We don't want to clobber any of the interrupted program's registers; yet a trip handler can't do much unless it has "elbow room." Explain how to use PUSHJ and POP so that plenty of local registers are safely available to a handler.
- ▶ 10. [20] True or false: If an MMIX program never uses the instructions PUSHJ, PUSHGO, POP, SAVE, or UNSAVE, all 256 registers \$0, \$1, ..., \$255 are essentially equivalent, in the sense that the distinction between local, global, and marginal registers is irrelevant.
11. [20] Guess what happens if a program issues more POP instructions than PUSH instructions.
- ▶ 12. [10] True or false:
  - a) The current prefix in an MMIXAL program always begins with a colon.
  - b) The current prefix in an MMIXAL program always ends with a colon.
  - c) The symbols : and :: are equivalent in MMIXAL programs.

- **13.** [21] Write two MMIX subroutines to calculate the Fibonacci number  $F_n \bmod 2^{64}$ , given  $n$ . The first subroutine should call itself recursively, using the definition

$$F_n = n \quad \text{if } n \leq 1; \quad F_n = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2} \quad \text{if } n > 1.$$

The second subroutine should *not* be recursive. Both subroutines should use PUSH/POP linkage and should avoid global variables entirely.

- **14.** [M21] What is the running time of the subroutines in exercise 13?
- **15.** [21] Convert the recursive subroutine of exercise 13 to GO-style linkage, using a memory stack as in (15) instead of MMIX's register stack. Compare the efficiency of the two versions.
- **16.** [25] (*Nonlocal goto statements.*) Sometimes we want to jump out of a subroutine, to a location that is not in the calling routine. For example, suppose subroutine A calls subroutine B, which calls subroutine C, which calls itself recursively a number of times before deciding that it wants to exit directly to A. Explain how to handle such situations when using MMIX's register stack. (We can't simply JMP from C to A; the stack must be properly popped.)

### 1.4.2'. Coroutines

Subroutines are special cases of more general program components, called *co-routines*. In contrast to the unsymmetric relationship between a main routine and a subroutine, there is complete symmetry between coroutines, which *call on each other*.

To understand the coroutine concept, let us consider another way of thinking about subroutines. The viewpoint adopted in the previous section was that a subroutine was merely an extension of the computer hardware, introduced to save lines of coding. This may be true, but another point of view is also possible: We may consider the main program and the subroutine as a *team* of programs, each member of the team having a certain job to do. The main program, in the course of doing its job, will activate the subprogram; the subprogram will perform its own function and then activate the main program. We might stretch our imagination to believe that, from the subroutine's point of view, when it exits *it* is calling the *main* routine; the main routine continues to perform its duty, then "exits" to the subroutine. The subroutine acts, then calls the main routine again.

This egalitarian philosophy may sound far-fetched, but it actually rings true with respect to coroutines. There is no way to distinguish which of two coroutines is subordinate to the other. Suppose a program consists of coroutines A and B; when programming A, we may think of B as our subroutine, but when programming B, we may think of A as our subroutine. Whenever a coroutine is activated, it resumes execution of its program at the point where the action was last suspended.

The coroutines A and B might, for example, be two programs that play chess. We can combine them so that they will play against each other.

Such coroutine linkage is easy to achieve with MMIX if we set aside two global registers, *a* and *b*. In coroutine A, the instruction "GO *a*,*b*,0" is used to

activate coroutine B; in coroutine B, the instruction “GO b,a,0” is used to activate coroutine A. This scheme requires only  $3v$  of time to transfer control each way.

The essential difference between routine-subroutine and coroutine-coroutine linkage can be seen by comparing the GO-type linkage of the previous section with the present scheme: A subroutine is always initiated *at its beginning*, which is usually a fixed place; the main routine or a coroutine is always initiated *at the place following* where it last terminated.

Coroutines arise most naturally in practice when they are connected with algorithms for input and output. For example, suppose it is the duty of coroutine A to read a file and to perform some transformation on the input, reducing it to a sequence of items. Another coroutine, which we will call B, does further processing of those items, and outputs the answers; B will periodically call for the successive input items found by A. Thus, coroutine B jumps to A whenever it wants the next input item, and coroutine A jumps to B whenever an input item has been found. The reader may say, “Well, B is the main program and A is merely a *subroutine* for doing the input.” This, however, becomes less true when the process A is very complicated; indeed, we can imagine A as the main routine and B as a subroutine for doing the output, and the above description remains valid. The usefulness of the coroutine idea emerges midway between these two extremes, when both A and B are complicated and each one calls the other in numerous places. It is not easy to find short, simple examples of coroutines that illustrate the importance of the idea; the most useful coroutine applications are generally quite lengthy.

In order to study coroutines in action, let us consider a contrived example. Suppose we want to write a program that translates one code into another. The input code to be translated is a sequence of 8-bit characters terminated by a period, such as

a2b5e3426fg0zyw3210pq89r. (1)

This code appears on the standard input file, interspersed with whitespace characters in an arbitrary fashion. For our purposes a “whitespace character” will be any byte whose value is less than or equal to #20, the ASCII code for ‘ ’. All whitespace characters in the input are ignored; the other characters should be interpreted as follows, when they are read in sequence: (1) If the next character is one of the decimal digits 0 or 1 or  $\dots$  or 9, say  $n$ , it indicates  $(n+1)$  repetitions of the following character, whether the following character is a digit or not. (2) A nondigit simply denotes itself. The output of our program is to consist of the resulting sequence separated into groups of three characters each, until a period appears; the last group may have fewer than three characters. For example, (1) should be translated into

abb bee eee e44 446 66f gzy w22 220 0pq 999 999 999 r. (2)

Notice that 3426f does not mean 3427 repetitions of the letter f; it means 4 fours and 3 sixes followed by f. If the input sequence is ‘1.’, the output is simply ‘.’, not ‘..’, because the first period terminates the output. The goal of



our program is to produce a sequence of lines on the standard output file, with 16 three-character groups per line (except, of course, that the final line might be shorter). The three-character groups should be separated by blank spaces, and each line should end as usual with the ASCII newline character #a.

To accomplish this translation, we will write two coroutines and a subroutine. The program begins by giving symbolic names to three global registers, one for temporary storage and the others for coroutine linkage.

```

01 * An example of coroutines
02 t      IS    $255  Temporary data of short duration
03 in     GREG  0     Address for resuming the first coroutine
04 out    GREG  0     Address for resuming the second coroutine █

```

The next step is to set aside the memory locations used for working storage.

```

05 * Input and output buffers
06      LOC    Data_Segment
07      GREG  @      Base address
08 OutBuf  TETRA "    ",#a,0 (see exercise 3)
09 Period  BYTE  '. .'
10 InArgs  OCTA  InBuf,1000
11 InBuf   LOC   #100      █

```

Now we turn to the program itself. The subroutine we need, called `NextChar`, is designed to find non-whitespace characters of the input, and to return the next such character:

```

12 * Subroutine for character input
13 inptr   GREG  0      (the current input position)
14 1H      LDA   t,InArgs  Fill the input buffer.
15        TRAP  0,Fgets,StdIn
16        LDA   inptr,InBuf  Start at beginning of buffer.
17 0H      GREG  Period
18        CSN   inptr,t,OB   If error occurred, read a '. '.
19 NextChar LDBU  $0,inptr,0  Fetch the next character.
20        INCL  inptr,1
21        BZ    $0,1B      Branch if at end of buffer.
22        CMPU  t,$0,' '
23        BNP   t,NextChar  Branch if character is whitespace.
24        POP   1,0      Return to caller. █

```

This subroutine has the following characteristics:

Calling sequence: `PUSHJ $R,NextChar`.

Entry conditions: `inptr` points to the first unread character.

Exit conditions: `$R` = next non-whitespace character of input;  
`inptr` is ready for the next entry to `NextChar`.

The subroutine also changes register `t`, namely register \$255; but we usually omit that register from such specifications, as we did in 1.4.1'-(10).

Our first coroutine, called **In**, finds the characters of the input code with the proper replication. It begins initially at location **In1**:

```

25 * First coroutine
26 count    GREG  0                (the repetition counter)
27 1H        GO    in,out,0        Send a character to the Out coroutine.
28 In1       PUSHJ $0,NextChar    Get a new character.
29          CMPU   t,$0,'9'
30          PBP    t,1B            Branch if it exceeds '9'.
31          SUB    count,$0,'0'
32          BN     count,1B        Branch if it is less than '0'.
33          PUSHJ $0,NextChar    Get another character.
34 1H        GO    in,out,0        Send it to Out.
35          SUB    count,count,1  Decrease the repetition counter.
36          PBNN   count,1B       Repeat if necessary.
37          JMP    In1            Otherwise begin a new cycle. █

```

This coroutine has the following characteristics:

Calling sequence (from **Out**): **GO out,in,0**.

Exit conditions (to **Out**): **\$0** = next input character with proper replication.

Entry conditions

(upon return): **\$0** unchanged from its value at exit.

Register **count** is private to **In** and need not be mentioned.

The other coroutine, called **Out**, puts the code into three-character groups and sends them to the standard output file. It begins initially at **Out1**:

```

38 * Second coroutine
39 outptr    GREG  0                (the current output position)
40 1H        LDA    t,OutBuf        Empty the output buffer.
41          TRAP    0,Fputs,StdOut
42 Out1      LDA    outptr,OutBuf    Start at beginning of buffer.
43 2H        GO     out,in,0        Get a new character from In.
44          STBU    $0,outptr,0     Store it as the first of three.
45          CMP     t,$0,'.'
46          BZ      t,1F            Branch if it was '.'.
47          GO     out,in,0        Otherwise get another character.
48          STBU    $0,outptr,1     Store it as the second of three.
49          CMP     t,$0,'.'
50          BZ      t,2F            Branch if it was '.'.
51          GO     out,in,0        Otherwise get another character.
52          STBU    $0,outptr,2     Store it as the third of three.
53          CMP     t,$0,'.'
54          BZ      t,3F            Branch if it was '.'.
55          INCL    outptr,4        Otherwise advance to next group.
56 OH        GREG   OutBuf+4*16
57          CMP     t,outptr,0B
58          PBNZ    t,2B            Branch if fewer than 16 groups.
59          JMP     1B            Otherwise finish the line.

```

```

60 3H      INCL  outptr,1      Move past a stored character.
61 2H      INCL  outptr,1      Move past a stored character.
62 0H      GREG  #a            (newline character)
63 1H      STBU  0B,outptr,1    Store newline after period.
64 0H      GREG  0            (null character)
65         STBU  0B,outptr,2    Store null after newline.
66         LDA   t,OutBuf
67         TRAP  0,Fputs,StdOut  Output the final line.
68         TRAP  0,Halt,0       Terminate the program. █

```

The characteristics of `Out` are designed to complement those of `In`:

Calling sequence (from `In`): `GO in,out,0`.

Exit conditions (to `In`): `$0` unchanged from its value at entry.

Entry conditions

(upon return): `$0` = next input character with proper replication.

To complete the program, we need to get everything off to a good start. Initialization of coroutines tends to be a little tricky, although not really difficult.

```

69 * Initialization
70 Main      LDA   inptr,InBuf  Initialize NextChar.
71          GETA   in,In1       Initialize In.
72          JMP    Out1         Start with Out (see exercise 2). █

```

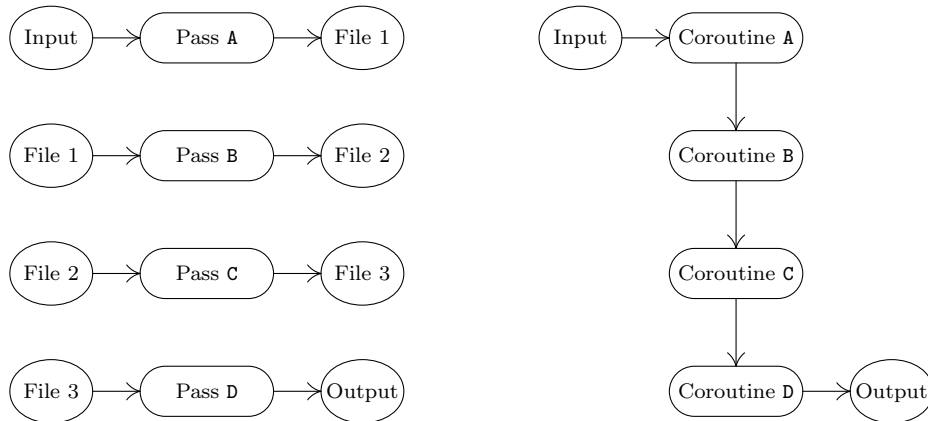
This completes the program. The reader should study it carefully, noting in particular how each coroutine can be read and written independently as though the other coroutine were its subroutine.

We learned in Section 1.4.1' that MMIX's `PUSHJ` and `POP` instructions are superior to the `GO` command with respect to subroutine linkage. But with coroutines the opposite is true: Pushing and popping are quite unsymmetrical, and MMIX's register stack can get hopelessly entangled if two or more coroutines try to use it simultaneously. (See exercise 6.)

There is an important relation between coroutines and *multipass algorithms*. For example, the translation process we have just described could have been done in two distinct passes: We could first have done just the `In` coroutine, applying it to the entire input and writing each character with the proper amount of replication into an intermediate file. After this was finished, we could have read that file and done just the `Out` coroutine, taking the characters in groups of three. This would be called a "two-pass" process. (Intuitively, a "pass" denotes a complete scan of the input. This definition is not precise, and in many algorithms the number of passes taken is not at all clear; but the intuitive concept of "pass" is useful in spite of its vagueness.)

Figure 22(a) illustrates a four-pass process. Quite often we will find that the same process can be done in just one pass, as shown in part (b) of the figure, if we substitute four coroutines A, B, C, D for the respective passes A, B, C, D. Coroutine A will jump to B when pass A would have written an item of output on File 1; coroutine B will jump to A when pass B would have read an item of input from File 1, and B will jump to C when pass B would have written an item

of output on File 2; etc. UNIX<sup>®</sup> users will recognize this as a “pipe,” denoted by “PassA | PassB | PassC | PassD”. The programs for passes B, C, and D are sometimes referred to as “filters.”



**Fig. 22.** Passes: (a) a four-pass algorithm, and (b) a one-pass algorithm.

Conversely, a process done by  $n$  coroutines can often be transformed into an  $n$ -pass process. Due to this correspondence it is worthwhile to compare multipass algorithms with one-pass algorithms.

a) *Psychological difference.* A multipass algorithm is generally easier to create and to understand than a one-pass algorithm for the same problem. A process that has been broken into a sequence of small steps, which happen one after the other, is easier to comprehend than an involved process in which many transformations take place simultaneously.

Also, if a very large problem is being tackled and if many people are supposed to cooperate in producing a computer program, a multipass algorithm provides a natural way to divide up the job.

These advantages of a multipass algorithm are present in coroutines as well, since each coroutine can be written essentially separate from the others. The linkage makes an apparently multipass algorithm into a single-pass process.

b) *Time difference.* The time required to pack, write, read, and unpack the intermediate data that flows between passes (for example, the information in the files of Fig. 22) is avoided in a one-pass algorithm. For this reason, a one-pass algorithm will be faster.

c) *Space difference.* The one-pass algorithm requires space to hold all the programs in memory simultaneously, while a multipass algorithm requires space for only one at a time. This requirement may affect the speed, even to a greater extent than indicated in statement (b). For example, many computers have a limited amount of “fast memory” and a larger amount of slower memory; if each

pass just barely fits into the fast memory, the result will be considerably faster than if we use coroutines in a single pass (since the use of coroutines would presumably force most of the program to appear in the slower memory or to be repeatedly swapped in and out of fast memory).

Occasionally there is a need to design algorithms for several computer configurations at once, some of which have larger memory capacity than others. In such cases it is possible to write the program in terms of coroutines, and to let the memory size govern the number of passes: Load together as many coroutines as feasible, and supply input or output subroutines for the missing links.

Although this relationship between coroutines and passes is important, we should keep in mind that coroutine applications cannot always be split into multipass algorithms. If coroutine B gets input from A and also sends back crucial information to A, as in the example of chess play mentioned earlier, the sequence of actions can't be converted into pass A followed by pass B.

Conversely, it is clear that some multipass algorithms cannot be converted to coroutines. Some algorithms are inherently multipass; for example, the second pass may require cumulative information from the first pass, like the total number of occurrences of a certain word in the input. There is an old joke worth noting in this regard:

*Little old lady, riding a bus.* "Little boy, can you tell me how to get off at Pasadena Street?"

*Little boy.* "Just watch me, and get off two stops before I do."

(The joke is that the little boy gives a two-pass algorithm.)

So much for multipass algorithms. Coroutines also play an important role in discrete system simulation; see Section 2.2.5. When several more-or-less independent coroutines are controlled by a master process, they are often called *threads* of a computation. We will see further examples of coroutines in numerous places throughout this series of books. The important idea of *replicated coroutines* is discussed in Chapter 8, and some interesting applications of this idea may be found in Chapter 10.

## EXERCISES

1. [10] Explain why short, simple examples of coroutines are hard for the author of a textbook to find.
- 2. [20] The program in the text starts up the `Out` coroutine first. What would happen if `In` were the first to be executed instead—that is, if lines 71 and 72 were changed to `"GETA out,Out1; JMP In1"`?
3. [15] Explain the `TETRA` instruction on line 08 of the program in the text. (There are exactly fifteen blank spaces between the double-quote marks.)
4. [20] Suppose two coroutines A and B want to treat `MMIX`'s remainder register `rR` as if it were their private property, although both coroutines do division. (In other words, when one coroutine jumps to the other, it wants to be able to assume that the contents of `rR` will not have been altered when the other coroutine returns.) Devise a coroutine linkage that allows them this freedom.

5. [20] Could MMIX do reasonably efficient coroutine linkage by using its `PUSH` and `POP` instructions, without any `GO` commands?
6. [20] The program in the text uses MMIX's register stack only in a very limited way, namely when `In` calls `NextChar`. Discuss to what extent two cooperating coroutines could both make use of the register stack.
- 7. [30] Write an MMIX program that *reverses* the translation done by the program in the text. That is, your program should convert a file containing three-character groups like (2) into a file containing code like (1). The output should be as short a string of characters as possible, except for newlines; thus, for example, the zero before the `z` in (1) would not really be produced from (2).

### 1.4.3'. Interpretive Routines

In this section we will investigate a common type of program known as an *interpretive routine*, often called an *interpreter* for short. An interpretive routine is a computer program that performs the instructions of another program, where the other program is written in some machine-like language. By a machine-like language, we mean a way of representing instructions, where the instructions typically have operation codes, addresses, etc. (This definition, like most definitions of today's computer terms, is not precise, nor should it be; we cannot draw the line exactly and say just which programs are interpreters and which are not.)

Historically, the first interpreters were built around machine-like languages designed specially for simple programming; such languages were easier to use than a real machine language. The rise of symbolic languages for programming soon eliminated the need for interpretive routines of that kind, but interpreters have by no means begun to die out. On the contrary, their use has continued to grow, to the extent that an effective use of interpretive routines may be regarded as one of the essential characteristics of modern programming. The new applications of interpreters are made chiefly for the following reasons:

- a) a machine-like language is able to represent a complicated sequence of decisions and actions in a compact, efficient manner; and
- b) such a representation provides an excellent way to communicate between passes of a multipass process.

In such cases, special purpose machine-like languages are developed for use in a particular program, and programs in those languages are often generated only by computers. (Today's expert programmers are also good machine designers: They not only create an interpretive routine, they also define a *virtual machine* whose language is to be interpreted.)

The interpretive technique has the further advantage of being relatively machine-independent, since only the interpreter must be revised when changing computers. Furthermore, helpful debugging aids can readily be built into an interpretive system.

Examples of type (a) interpreters appear in several places later in this series of books; see, for example, the recursive interpreter in Chapter 8 and the "Parsing

Machine” in Chapter 10. We typically need to deal with situations in which a great many special cases arise, all similar, but having no really simple pattern.

For example, consider writing an algebraic compiler in which we want to generate efficient machine-language instructions that add two quantities together. There might be ten classes of quantities (constants, simple variables, subscripted variables, fixed or floating point, signed or unsigned, etc.) and the combination of all pairs yields 100 different cases. A long program would be required to do the proper thing in each case. The interpretive solution to this problem is to make up an ad hoc language whose “instructions” fit in one byte. Then we simply prepare a table of 100 “programs” in this language, where each program ideally fits in a single word. The idea is then to pick out the appropriate table entry and to perform the program found there. This technique is simple and efficient.

An example interpreter of type (b) appears in the article “Computer-Drawn Flowcharts” by D. E. Knuth, *CACM* **6** (1963), 555–563. In a multipass program, the earlier passes must transmit information to the later passes. This information is often transmitted most efficiently in a machine-like language, as a set of instructions for the later pass; the later pass is then nothing but a special purpose interpretive routine, and the earlier pass is a special purpose “compiler.” This philosophy of multipass operation may be characterized as *telling* the later pass what to do, whenever possible, rather than simply presenting it with a lot of facts and asking it to *figure out* what to do.

Another example of a type-(b) interpreter occurs in connection with compilers for special languages. If the language includes many features that are not easily done on the machine except by subroutine, the resulting object programs will be very long sequences of subroutine calls. This would happen, for example, if the language were concerned primarily with multiple precision arithmetic. In such a case the object program would be considerably shorter if it were expressed in an interpretive language. See, for example, the book *ALGOL 60 Implementation*, by B. Randell and L. J. Russell (New York: Academic Press, 1964), which describes a compiler to translate from ALGOL 60 into an interpretive language, and which also describes the interpreter for that language; and see “An ALGOL 60 Compiler,” by Arthur Evans, Jr., *Ann. Rev. Auto. Programming* **4** (1964), 87–124, for examples of interpretive routines used *within* a compiler. The rise of microprogrammed machines and of special-purpose integrated circuit chips has made this interpretive approach even more valuable.

The T<sub>E</sub>X program, which produced the pages of the book you are now reading, converted a file that contained the text of this section into an interpretive language called DVI format, designed by D. R. Fuchs in 1979. [See D. E. Knuth, *T<sub>E</sub>X: The Program* (Reading, Mass.: Addison–Wesley, 1986), Part 31.] The DVI file that T<sub>E</sub>X produced was then processed by an interpreter called *dvips*, written by T. G. Rokicki, and converted to a file of instructions in another interpretive language called PostScript® [Adobe Systems Inc., *PostScript Language Reference*, 3rd edition (Reading, Mass.: Addison–Wesley, 1999)]. The PostScript file was sent to the publisher, who sent it to a commercial printer, who used a PostScript interpreter to produce printing plates. This three-pass

operation illustrates interpreters of type (b);  $\text{\TeX}$  itself also includes a small interpreter of type (a) to process the so-called ligature and kerning information for characters that are being printed [*TeX: The Program*, §545].

There is another way to look at a program written in interpretive language: It may be regarded as a series of subroutine calls, one after another. Such a program may in fact be expanded into a long sequence of calls on subroutines, and, conversely, such a sequence can usually be packed into a coded form that is readily interpreted. The advantages of interpretive techniques are the compactness of representation, the machine independence, and the increased diagnostic capability. An interpreter can often be written so that the amount of time spent in interpretation of the code itself and branching to the appropriate routine is negligible.

**\*An MMIX simulator.** When the language presented to an interpretive routine is the machine language of another computer, the interpreter is often called a *simulator* (or sometimes an *emulator*).

In the author's opinion, entirely too much programmers' time has been spent in writing such simulators and entirely too much computer time has been wasted in using them. The motivation for simulators is simple: A computer installation buys a new machine and still wants to run programs written for the old machine (rather than rewriting the programs). However, this usually costs more and gives poorer results than if a special task force of programmers were given temporary employment to do the reprogramming. For example, the author once participated in such a reprogramming project, and a serious error was discovered in the original program, which had been in use for several years; the new program worked at five times the speed of the old, besides giving the right answers for a change! (Not all simulators are bad; for example, it is usually advantageous for a computer manufacturer to simulate a new machine before it has been built, so that software for the new machine may be developed as soon as possible. But that is a very specialized application.) An extreme example of the inefficient use of computer simulators is the true story of machine *A* simulating machine *B* running a program that simulates machine *C*. This is the way to make a large, expensive computer give poorer results than its cheaper cousin.

In view of all this, why should such a simulator rear its ugly head in this book? There are three reasons:

- a) The simulator we will describe below is a good example of a typical interpretive routine; the basic techniques employed in interpreters are illustrated here. It also illustrates the use of subroutines in a moderately long program.
- b) We will describe a simulator of the MMIX computer, written in (of all things) the MMIX language. This will reinforce our knowledge of the machine. It also will facilitate the writing of MMIX simulators for other computers, although we will not plunge deeply into the details of 64-bit integer or floating point arithmetic.
- c) Our simulation of MMIX explains how the register stack can be implemented efficiently in hardware, so that pushing and popping are accomplished with very little work. Similarly, the simulator presented here clarifies the **SAVE** and **UNSAVE** operators, and it provides details about the behavior of trip interrupts. Such



things are best understood by looking at a reference implementation, so that we can see how the machine really works.

Computer simulators as described in this section should be distinguished from *discrete system simulators*. Discrete system simulators are important programs that will be discussed in Section 2.2.5.

Now let's turn to the task of writing an MMIX simulator. We begin by making a tremendous simplification: Instead of attempting to simulate all the things that happen simultaneously in a pipelined computer, we will interpret only one instruction at a time. Pipeline processing is extremely instructive and important, but it is beyond the scope of this book; interested readers can find a complete program for a full-fledged pipeline "meta-simulator" in the *MMIXware* document. We will content ourselves here with a simulator that is blithely unaware of such things as cache memory, virtual address translation, dynamic instruction scheduling, reorder buffers, etc., etc. Moreover, we will simulate only the instructions that ordinary MMIX user programs can do; privileged instructions like LDVTS, which are reserved for the operating system, will be considered erroneous if they arise. Trap interrupts will not be simulated by our program unless they perform rudimentary input or output as described in Section 1.3.2'.

The input to our program will be a binary file that specifies the initial contents of memory, just as the memory would be set up by an operating system when running a user program (including command line data). We want to mimic the behavior of MMIX's hardware, pretending that MMIX itself is interpreting the instructions that begin at symbolic location `Main`; thus, we want to implement the specifications that were laid down in Section 1.3.1', in the run-time environment that was discussed in Section 1.3.2'. Our program will, for example, maintain an array of 256 octabytes `g[0]`, `g[1]`, ..., `g[255]` for the simulated global registers. The first 32 elements of this array will be the special registers listed in Table 1.3.1'-2; one of those special registers will be the simulated clock, `rC`. We will assume that each instruction takes a fixed amount of time, as specified by Table 1.3.1'-1; the simulated `rC` will increase by  $2^{32}$  for each  $\mu$  and by 1 for each  $v$ . Thus, for example, after we have simulated Program 1.3.2'P, the simulated `rC` will contain `#00003228000bb091`, which represents  $12840\mu + 766097v$ .

The program is rather long, but it has many points of interest and we will study it in short easy pieces. It begins as usual by defining a few symbols and by specifying the contents of the data segment. We put the array of 256 simulated global registers first in that segment; for example, the simulated `$255` will be the octabyte `g[255]`, in memory location `Global+8*255`. This global array is followed by a similar array called the *local register ring*, where we will keep the top items of the simulated register stack. The size of this ring is set to 256, although 512 or any higher power of 2 would also work. (A large ring of local registers costs more, but it might be noticeably faster when a program uses the register stack heavily. One of the purposes of a simulator is to find out whether additional hardware would be worth the expense.) The main portion of the data segment, starting at `Chunk0`, will be devoted to the simulated memory.

```

001 * MMIX Simulator (Simplified)
002 t      IS   $255      Volatile register for temporary info
003 lring_size IS 256      Size of the local register ring
004        LOC  Data_Segment Start at location #2000000000000000
005 Global  LOC  @+8*256   256 octabytes for global registers
006 g      GREG Global     Base address for globals
007 Local   LOC  @+8*lring_size lring_size octabytes for local registers
008 l      GREG Local      Base address for locals
009        GREG @          Base address for IOArgs and Chunk0
010 IOArgs  OCTA 0,BinaryRead (See exercise 20)
011 Chunk0  IS   @          Beginning of simulated memory area
012        LOC  #100       Put everything else in the text segment. █

```

One of the key subroutines we will need is called **MemFind**. Given a 64-bit address  $A$ , this subroutine returns the resulting address  $R$  where the simulated contents of  $M_8[A]$  can be found. Of course  $2^{64}$  bytes of simulated memory cannot be squeezed into a  $2^{61}$ -byte data segment; but the simulator remembers all addresses that have occurred before, and it assumes that all locations not yet encountered are equal to zero.

Memory is divided into “chunks” of  $2^{12}$  bytes each. **MemFind** looks at the leading  $64 - 12 = 52$  bits of  $A$  to see what chunk it belongs to, and extends the list of known chunks, if necessary. Then it computes  $R$  by adding the trailing 12 bits of  $A$  to the starting address of the relevant simulated chunk. (The chunk size could be any power of 2, as long as each chunk contains at least one octabyte. Small chunks cause **MemFind** to search through longer lists of chunks-in-hand; large chunks cause **MemFind** to waste space for bytes that will never be accessed.)

Each simulated chunk is encapsulated in a “node,” which occupies  $2^{12} + 24$  bytes of memory. The first octabyte of such a node, called the **KEY**, identifies the simulated address of the first byte in the chunk. The second octabyte, called the **LINK**, points to the next node on **MemFind**’s list; it is zero on the last node of the list. The **LINK** is followed by  $2^{12}$  bytes of simulated memory called the **DATA**. Finally, each node ends with eight all-zero bytes, which are used as padding in the implementation of input-output (see exercises 15–17).

**MemFind** maintains its list of chunk nodes in order of use: The first node, pointed to by **head**, is the one that **MemFind** found on the previous call, and it links to the next-most-recently-used chunk, etc. If the future is like the past, **MemFind** will therefore not have to search far down its list. (Section 6.1 discusses such “self-organizing” list searches in detail.) Initially **head** points to **Chunk0**, whose **KEY** and **LINK** and **DATA** are all zero. The allocation pointer **alloc** is set initially to the place where the next chunk node will appear when it is needed, namely **Chunk0+nodesize**.

We implement **MemFind** with the **PREFIX** operation of **MMIXAL** discussed in Section 1.4.1', so that the private symbols **head**, **key**, **addr**, etc., will not conflict with any symbols in the rest of the program. The calling sequence will be

```
SET arg,A; PUSHJ res,MemFind (1)
```

after which the resulting address  $R$  will appear in register **res**.

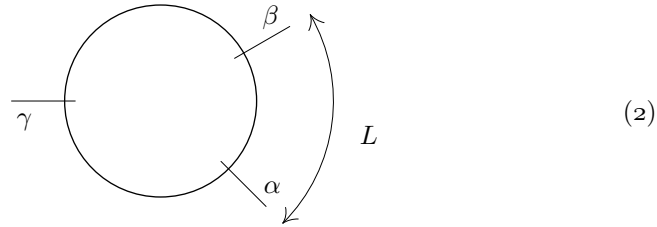
|     |          |        |                      |                                                            |
|-----|----------|--------|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 013 |          | PREFIX | :Mem:                | (Begin private symbols for MemFind)                        |
| 014 | head     | GREG   | 0                    | Address of first chunk                                     |
| 015 | curkey   | GREG   | 0                    | KEY(head)                                                  |
| 016 | alloc    | GREG   | 0                    | Address of next chunk to allocate                          |
| 017 | Chunk    | IS     | #1000                | Bytes per chunk, must be a power of 2                      |
| 018 | addr     | IS     | \$0                  | The given address $A$                                      |
| 019 | key      | IS     | \$1                  | Its chunk address                                          |
| 020 | test     | IS     | \$2                  | Temporary register for key search                          |
| 021 | newlink  | IS     | \$3                  | The second most recently used node                         |
| 022 | p        | IS     | \$4                  | Temporary pointer register                                 |
| 023 | t        | IS     | :t                   | External temporary register                                |
| 024 | KEY      | IS     | 0                    |                                                            |
| 025 | LINK     | IS     | 8                    |                                                            |
| 026 | DATA     | IS     | 16                   |                                                            |
| 027 | nodesize | GREG   | Chunk+3*8            |                                                            |
| 028 | mask     | GREG   | Chunk-1              |                                                            |
| 029 | :MemFind | ANDN   | key,addr,mask        |                                                            |
| 030 |          | CMPU   | t,key,curkey         |                                                            |
| 031 |          | PBZ    | t,4F                 | Branch if head is the right chunk.                         |
| 032 |          | BN     | addr,:Error          | Disallow negative addresses $A$ .                          |
| 033 |          | SET    | newlink,head         | Prepare for the search loop.                               |
| 034 | 1H       | SET    | p,head               | $p \leftarrow \text{head}$ .                               |
| 035 |          | LDOU   | head,p,LINK          | $\text{head} \leftarrow \text{LINK}(p)$ .                  |
| 036 |          | PBNZ   | head,2F              | Branch if $\text{head} \neq 0$ .                           |
| 037 |          | SET    | head,alloc           | Otherwise allocate a new node.                             |
| 038 |          | STOU   | key,head,KEY         |                                                            |
| 039 |          | ADDU   | alloc,alloc,nodesize |                                                            |
| 040 |          | JMP    | 3F                   |                                                            |
| 041 | 2H       | LDOU   | test,head,KEY        |                                                            |
| 042 |          | CMPU   | t,test,key           |                                                            |
| 043 |          | BNZ    | t,1B                 | Loop back if $\text{KEY}(\text{head}) \neq \text{key}$ .   |
| 044 | 3H       | LDOU   | t,head,LINK          | Adjust pointers: $t \leftarrow \text{LINK}(\text{head})$ , |
| 045 |          | STOU   | newlink,head,LINK    | $\text{LINK}(\text{head}) \leftarrow \text{newlink}$ ,     |
| 046 |          | SET    | curkey,key           | $\text{curkey} \leftarrow \text{key}$ ,                    |
| 047 |          | STOU   | t,p,LINK             | $\text{LINK}(p) \leftarrow t$ .                            |
| 048 | 4H       | SUBU   | t,addr,key           | $t \leftarrow \text{chunk offset}$ .                       |
| 049 |          | LDA    | \$0,head,DATA        | $\$0 \leftarrow \text{address of DATA}(\text{head})$ .     |
| 050 |          | ADDU   | \$0,t,\$0            |                                                            |
| 051 |          | POP    | 1,0                  | Return $R$ .                                               |
| 052 |          | PREFIX | :                    | (End of the ':Mem:' prefix)                                |
| 053 | res      | IS     | \$2                  | Result register for PUSHJ                                  |
| 054 | arg      | IS     | res+1                | Argument register for PUSHJ                                |

We come next to the most interesting aspect of the simulator, the implementation of MMIX's register stack. Recall from Section 1.4.1' that the register stack is conceptually a list of  $\tau$  items  $S[0], S[1], \dots, S[\tau-1]$ . The final item  $S[\tau-1]$  is said to be at the "top" of the stack, and MMIX's local registers  $\$0, \$1, \dots, \$(L-1)$  are the topmost  $L$  items  $S[\tau-L], S[\tau-L+1], \dots, S[\tau-1]$ ; here  $L$  is the value of special register rL. We could simulate the stack by simply keeping

it entirely in the simulated memory; but an efficient machine wants its registers to be instantly accessible, not in a relatively slow memory unit. Therefore we will simulate an efficient design that keeps the topmost stack items in an array of internal registers called the *local register ring*.

The basic idea is quite simple. Suppose the local register ring has  $\rho$  elements,  $l[0], l[1], \dots, l[\rho - 1]$ . Then we keep local register  $\$k$  in  $l[(\alpha + k) \bmod \rho]$ , where  $\alpha$  is an appropriate offset. (The value of  $\rho$  is chosen to be a power of 2, so that remainders mod  $\rho$  require no expensive computation. Furthermore we want  $\rho$  to be at least 256, so that there is room for all of the local registers.) A **PUSH** operation, which renumbers the local registers so that what once was, say,  $\$3$  is now called  $\$0$ , simply increases the value of  $\alpha$  by 3; a **POP** operation restores the previous state by decreasing  $\alpha$ . Although the registers change their numbers, no data actually needs to be pushed down or popped up.

Of course we need to use memory as a backup when the register stack gets large. The status of the ring at any time is best visualized in terms of three variables,  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$ :



Elements  $l[\alpha], l[\alpha + 1], \dots, l[\beta - 1]$  of the ring are the current local registers  $\$0, \$1, \dots, \$(L - 1)$ ; elements  $l[\beta], l[\beta + 1], \dots, l[\gamma - 1]$  are currently unused; and elements  $l[\gamma], l[\gamma + 1], \dots, l[\alpha - 1]$  contain items of the register stack that have been pushed down. If  $\gamma \neq \alpha$ , we can increase  $\gamma$  by 1 if we first store  $l[\gamma]$  in memory. If  $\gamma \neq \beta$ , we can decrease  $\gamma$  by 1 if we then load  $l[\gamma]$ . **MMIX** has two special registers called the *stack pointer*  $rS$  and the *stack offset*  $rO$ , which hold the memory addresses where  $l[\gamma]$  and  $l[\alpha]$  will be stored, if necessary. The values of  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$  are related to  $rL$ ,  $rS$ , and  $rO$  by the formulas

$$\alpha = (rO/8) \bmod \rho, \quad \beta = (\alpha + rL) \bmod \rho, \quad \gamma = (rS/8) \bmod \rho. \quad (3)$$

The simulator keeps most of **MMIX**'s special registers in the first 32 positions of the global register array. For example, the simulated remainder register  $rR$  is the octabyte in location **Global+8\*rR**. But eight of the special registers, including  $rS$ ,  $rO$ ,  $rL$ , and  $rG$ , are potentially relevant to every simulated instruction, so the simulator maintains them separately in its own global registers. Thus, for example, register **ss** holds the simulated value of  $rS$ , and register **ll** holds eight times the simulated value of  $rL$ :

```

055 ss GREG 0 The simulated stack pointer, rS
056 oo GREG 0 The simulated stack offset, rO
057 ll GREG 0 The simulated local threshold register, rL, times 8
058 gg GREG 0 The simulated global threshold register, rG, times 8
```

```

059 aa GREG 0 The simulated arithmetic status register, rA
060 ii GREG 0 The simulated interval counter, rI
061 uu GREG 0 The simulated usage counter, rU
062 cc GREG 0 The simulated cycle counter, rC ■

```

Here is a subroutine that obtains the current value of the simulated register  $\$k$ , given  $k$ . The calling sequence is

```
SLU arg,k,3; PUSHJ res,GetReg (4)
```

after which the desired value will be in `res`.

```

063 lring_mask GREG 8*lring_size-1
064 :GetReg      CMPU  t,$0,gg          Subroutine to get $k:
065              BN    t,1F             Branch if  $k < G$ .
066              LDOU  $0,g,$0         Otherwise  $\$k$  is global; load  $g[k]$ .
067              POP   1,0             Return the result.
068 1H           CMPU  t,$0,1l          $t \leftarrow [\$k \text{ is local}]$ .
069              ADDU  $0,$0,00
070              AND   $0,$0,lring_mask
071              LDOU  $0,1,$0         Load  $l[(\alpha + k) \bmod \rho]$ .
072              CSNN  $0,t,0         Zero it if  $\$k$  is marginal.
073              POP   1,0             Return the result. ■

```

Notice the colon in the label field of line 064. This colon is redundant, because the current prefix is ‘:’ (see line 052); the colon on line 029 was, however, necessary for the external symbol `MemFind`, because at that time the current prefix was ‘:Mem:’. Colons in the label field, redundant or not, give us a handy way to advertise the fact that a subroutine is being defined.

The next subroutines, `StackStore` and `StackLoad`, simulate the operations of increasing  $\gamma$  by 1 and decreasing  $\gamma$  by 1 in the diagram (2). They return no result. `StackStore` is called only when  $\gamma \neq \alpha$ ; `StackLoad` is called only when  $\gamma \neq \beta$ . Both of them must save and restore `rJ`, because they are not leaf subroutines.

```

074 :StackStore GET   $0,rJ           Save the return address.
075              AND   t,ss,lring_mask
076              LDOU  $1,1,t          $\$1 \leftarrow l[\gamma]$ .
077              SET   arg,ss
078              PUSHJ res,MemFind
079              STOU  $1,res,0        $M_8[rS] \leftarrow \$1$ .
080              ADDU  ss,ss,8        Increase rS by 8.
081              PUT   rJ,$0         Restore the return address.
082              POP   0             Return to caller.
083 :StackLoad  GET   $0,rJ           Save the return address.
084              SUBU  ss,ss,8        Decrease rS by 8.
085              SET   arg,ss
086              PUSHJ res,MemFind
087              LDOU  $1,res,0        $\$1 \leftarrow M_8[rS]$ .
088              AND   t,ss,lring_mask

```

```

089          STOU  $1,1,t          l[γ] ← $1.
090          PUT   rJ,$0          Restore the return address.
091          POP   0              Return to caller. █

```

(Register rJ on lines 074, 081, 083, and 090 is, of course, the *real* rJ, not the simulated rJ. When we simulate a machine on itself, we have to remember to keep such things straight!)

The **StackRoom** subroutine is called when we have just increased  $\beta$ . It checks whether  $\beta = \gamma$  and, if so, it increases  $\gamma$ .

```

092 :StackRoom SUBU  t,ss,oo
093          SUBU  t,t,1l
094          AND   t,t,lring_mask
095          PBNZ  t,1F          Branch if (rS-rO)/8 ≠ rL (modulo ρ).
096          GET   $0,rJ        Oops, we're not a leaf subroutine.
097          PUSHJ res,StackStore Advance rS.
098          PUT   rJ,$0        Restore the return address.
099 1H        POP   0          Return to caller. █

```

Now we come to the heart of the simulator, its main simulation loop. An interpretive routine generally has a central control section that is called into action between interpreted instructions. In our case, the program transfers to location **Fetch** when it is ready to simulate a new command. We keep the address @ of the next simulated instruction in the global register **inst\_ptr**. **Fetch** usually sets  $\text{loc} \leftarrow \text{inst\_ptr}$  and advances **inst\_ptr** by 4; but if we are simulating a **RESUME** command that inserts the simulated rX into the instruction stream, **Fetch** sets  $\text{loc} \leftarrow \text{inst\_ptr} - 4$  and leaves **inst\_ptr** unchanged. This simulator considers an instruction to be ineligible for execution unless its location **loc** is in the text segment (that is,  $\text{loc} < \#2000\,0000\,0000\,0000$ ).

```

100 * The main loop
101 loc      GREG  0   Where the simulator is at
102 inst_ptr  GREG  0   Where the simulator will be next
103 inst      GREG  0   The current instruction being simulated
104 resuming  GREG  0   Are we resuming an instruction in rX?

105 Fetch    PBZ   resuming,1F   Branch if not resuming.
106          SUBU  loc,inst_ptr,4 loc ← inst_ptr - 4.
107          LDTU  inst,g,8*rX+4 inst ← right half of rX.
108          JMP   2F
109 1H        SET   loc,inst_ptr   loc ← inst_ptr.
110          SET   arg,loc
111          PUSHJ res,MemFind
112          LDTU  inst,res,0      inst ← M4[loc].
113          ADDU  inst_ptr,loc,4  inst_ptr ← loc + 4.
114 2H        CMPU  t,loc,g
115          BNN   t,Error        Branch if loc ≥ Data_Segment. █

```

The main control routine does the things common to all instructions. It unpacks the current instruction into its various parts and puts the parts into

convenient registers for later use. Most importantly, it sets global register *f* to 64 bits of “info” corresponding to the current opcode. A master table, which starts at location *Info*, contains such information for each of MMIX’s 256 opcodes. (See Table 1 on page 88.) For example, *f* is set to an odd value if and only if the *Z* field of the current opcode is an “immediate” operand or the opcode is *JMP*; similarly  $f \wedge \#40$  is nonzero if and only if the instruction has a relative address. Later steps of the simulator will be able to decide quickly what needs to be done with respect to the current instruction because most of the relevant information appears in register *f*.

```

116 op    GREG 0  Opcode of the current instruction
117 xx    GREG 0  X field of the current instruction
118 yy    GREG 0  Y field of the current instruction
119 zz    GREG 0  Z field of the current instruction
120 yz    GREG 0  YZ field of the current instruction
121 f     GREG 0  Packed information about the current opcode
122 xxx   GREG 0  X field times 8
123 x     GREG 0  X operand and/or result
124 y     GREG 0  Y operand
125 z     GREG 0  Z operand
126 xptr  GREG 0  Location where x should be stored
127 exc   GREG 0  Arithmetic exceptions

128 Z_is_immed_bit  IS #1  Flag bits possibly set in f
129 Z_is_source_bit IS #2
130 Y_is_immed_bit  IS #4
131 Y_is_source_bit IS #8
132 X_is_source_bit IS #10
133 X_is_dest_bit   IS #20
134 Rel_addr_bit    IS #40
135 Mem_bit         IS #80

136 Info  IS    #1000
137 Done  IS    Info+8*256
138 info  GREG  Info      (Base address for the master info table)
139 c255  GREG  8*255      (A handy constant)
140 c256  GREG  8*256      (Another handy constant)

141      MOR   op,inst,#8  op ← inst ≫ 24.
142      MOR   xx,inst,#4  xx ← (inst ≫ 16) ∧ #ff.
143      MOR   yy,inst,#2  yy ← (inst ≫ 8) ∧ #ff.
144      MOR   zz,inst,#1  zz ← inst ∧ #ff.
145 OH GREG -#10000
146      ANDN  yz,inst,0B
147      SLU   xxx,xx,3
148      SLU   t,op,3
149      LDOU  f,info,t    f ← Info[op].
150      SET   x,0         x ← 0 (default value).
151      SET   y,0         y ← 0 (default value).
152      SET   z,0         z ← 0 (default value).
153      SET   exc,0       exc ← 0 (default value). █

```

The first thing we do, after having unpacked the instruction into its various fields, is convert a relative address to an absolute address if necessary.

```

154      AND    t,f,Rel_addr_bit
155      PBZ    t,1F          Branch if not a relative address.
156      PBEV   f,2F          Branch if op isn't JMP or JMPB.
157  9H GREG -#1000000
158      ANDN   yz,inst,9B    yz ← inst ∧ #ffffff (namely XYZ).
159      ADDU   t,yz,9B        t ← XYZ − 224.
160      JMP    3F
161  2H ADDU   t,yz,0B        t ← YZ − 216.
162  3H CSOD   yz,op,t        Set yz ← t if op is odd ("backward").
163      SL     t,yz,2
164      ADDU   yz,loc,t      yz ← loc + yz ≪ 2. ■

```

The next task is critical for most instructions: We install the operands specified by the Y and Z fields into global registers y and z. Sometimes we also install a third operand into global register x, specified by the X field or coming from a special register like the simulated rD or rM.

```

165  1H      PBNB   resuming,Install_X   Branch unless resuming < 0.
...                                     (See exercise 14.)
174 Install_X AND    t,f,X_is_source_bit
175          PBZ    t,1F          Branch unless $X is a source.
176          SET    arg,xxx
177          PUSHJ  res,GetReg
178          SET    x,res          x ← $X.
179  1H      SRU    t,f,5
180          AND    t,t,#f8        t ← special register number, times 8.
181          PBZ    t,Install_Z
182          LDOU   x,g,t          If t ≠ 0, set x ← g[t].
183 Install_Z AND    t,f,Z_is_source_bit
184          PBZ    t,1F          Branch unless $Z is a source.
185          SLU    arg,zz,3
186          PUSHJ  res,GetReg
187          SET    z,res          z ← $Z.
188          JMP    Install_Y
189  1H      CSOD   z,f,zz        If Z is immediate, z ← Z.
190          AND    t,op,#f0
191          CMPLU  t,t,#e0
192          PBNZ   t,Install_Y     Branch unless #e0 ≤ op < #f0.
193          AND    t,op,#3
194          NEG    t,3,t
195          SLU    t,t,4
196          SLU    z,yz,t        z ← yz ≪ (48, 32, 16, or 0).
197          SET    y,x          y ← x.
198 Install_Y AND    t,f,Y_is_immed_bit
199          PBZ    t,1F          Branch unless Y is immediate.
200          SET    y,yy         y ← Y.
201          SLU    t,yy,40
202          ADDU   f,f,t        Insert Y into left half of f.

```



```

203 1H      AND    t,f,Y_is_source_bit
204          BZ     t,1F          Branch unless $Y is a source.
205          SLU    arg,yy,3
206          PUSHJ  res,GetReg
207          SET     y,res          y ← $Y. ■

```

When the X field specifies a destination register, we set `xptr` to the memory address where we will eventually store the simulated result; this address will be either in the `Global` array or the `Local` ring. The simulated register stack grows at this point if the destination register must be changed from marginal to local.

```

208 1H      AND    t,f,X_is_dest_bit
209          BZ     t,1F          Branch unless $X is a destination.
210 XDest    CMPU   t,xxx,gg
211          BN     t,3F          Branch if $X is not global.
212          LDA    xptr,g,xxx    xptr ← address of g[X].
213          JMP    1F
214 2H      ADDU    t,oo,ll
215          AND    t,t,lring_mask
216          STCO   0,1,t        l[(α + L) mod ρ] ← 0.
217          INCL   ll,8          L ← L + 1. ($L becomes local.)
218          PUSHJ  res,StackRoom Make sure β ≠ γ.
219 3H      CMPU   t,xxx,ll
220          BNN    t,2B          Branch if $X is not local.
221          ADD     t,xxx,oo
222          AND    t,t,lring_mask
223          LDA    xptr,l,t      xptr ← address of l[(α + X) mod ρ]. ■

```

Finally we reach the climax of the main control cycle: We simulate the current instruction by essentially doing a 256-way branch, based on the current opcode. The left half of register `f` is, in fact, an MMIX instruction that we *perform* at this point, by inserting it into the instruction stream via a `RESUME` command. For example, if we are simulating an `ADD` command, we put “`ADD x,y,z`” into the right half of `rX` and clear the exception bits of `rA`; the `RESUME` command will then cause the sum of registers `y` and `z` to be placed in register `x`, and `rA` will record whether overflow occurred. After the `RESUME`, control will pass to location `Done`, unless the inserted instruction was a branch or jump.

```

224 1H      AND    t,f,Mem_bit
225          PBZ    t,1F          Branch unless inst accesses memory.
226          ADDU    arg,y,z
227          CMPU   t,op,#A0      t ← [op is a load instruction].
228          BN     t,2F
229          CMPU   t,arg,g
230          BN     t>Error        Error if storing into the text segment.
231 2H      PUSHJ  res,MemFind    res ← address of M[y + z].
232 1H      SRU     t,f,32
233          PUT     rX,t          rX ← left half of f.
234          PUT     rM,x          rM ← x (prepare for MUX).
235          PUT     rE,x          rE ← x (prepare for FCMPE, FUNE, FEQLE).

```

```

236 OH GREG #30000
237     AND    t,aa,0B      t ← current rounding mode.
238     ORL    t,U_BIT<<8  Enable underflow trip (see below).
239     PUT    rA,t         Prepare rA for arithmetic.
240 OH GREG Done
241     PUT    rW,0B        rW ← Done.
242     RESUME 0            Execute the instruction in rX. █

```

Some instructions can't be simulated by simply "performing themselves" like an **ADD** command and jumping to **Done**. For example, a **MULU** command must insert the high half of its computed product into the simulated **rH**. A branch command must change **inst\_ptr** if the branch is taken. A **PUSHJ** command must push the simulated register stack, and a **POP** command must pop it. **SAVE**, **UNSAVE**, **RESUME**, **TRAP**, etc., all need special care; therefore the next part of the simulator deals with all cases that don't fit the nice "x equals y op z" pattern.

Let's start with multiplication and division, since they are easy:

```

243 MulU  MULU  x,y,z      Multiply y by z, unsigned.
244       GET    t,rH      Set t ← upper half of the product.
245       STOU   t,g,8*rH   g[rH] ← upper half product.
246       JMP    XDone     Finish by storing x.
247 Div   DIV   x,y,z
      ...                (For division, see exercise 6.) █

```

If the simulated instruction was a branch command, say "**BZ \$X,RA**", the main control routine will have converted the relative address **RA** to an absolute address in register **yz** (line 164), and it will also have placed the contents of the simulated **\$X** into register **x** (line 178). The **RESUME** command will then execute the instruction "**BZ x,BTaken**" (line 242); and control will pass to **BTaken** instead of **Done** if the simulated branch is taken. **BTaken** adds  $2v$  to the simulated running time, changes **inst\_ptr**, and jumps to **Update**.

```

254 BTaken  ADDU  cc,cc,4      Increase rC by 4v.
255 PBTaken SUBU  cc,cc,2      Decrease rC by 2v.
256       SET    inst_ptr,yz   inst_ptr ← branch address.
257       JMP    Update        Finish the command.
258 Go      SET    x,inst_ptr   GO instruction: Set x ← loc + 4.
259       ADDU   inst_ptr,y,z    inst_ptr ← (y + z) mod 264.
260       JMP    XDone         Finish by storing x. █

```

(Line 257 could have jumped to **Done**, but that would be slower; a shortcut to **Update** is justified because a branch command doesn't store **x** and cannot cause an arithmetic exception. See lines 500–541 below.)

A **PUSHJ** or **PUSHGO** command pushes the simulated register stack down by increasing the  $\alpha$  pointer of (2); this means increasing the simulated **rO**, namely register **oo**. If the command is "**PUSHJ \$X,RA**" and if **\$X** is local, we push **X + 1** octabytes down by first setting **\$X** ← **X** and then increasing **oo** by  $8(X + 1)$ . (The value we have put in **\$X** will be used later by **POP** to determine how to restore **oo** to its former value. Simulated register **\$X** will then be set to the

result of the subroutine, as explained in Section 1.4.1'.) If \$X is global, we push  $rL + 1$  octabytes down in a similar way.

```

261 PushGo ADDU yz,y,z      yz ← (y + z) mod 264.
262 PushJ  SET  inst_ptr,yz inst_ptr ← yz.
263        CMPU t,xxx,gg
264        PBN  t,1F        Branch if $X is local.
265        SET  xxx,1l      Pretend that X = rL.
266        SRU  xx,xxx,3
267        INCL 1l,8        Increase rL by 1.
268        PUSHJ 0,StackRoom Make sure β ≠ γ in (2).
269 1H      ADDU t,xxx,oo
270        AND  t,t,lring_mask
271        STOU xx,1,t      l[(α + X) mod ρ] ← X.
272        ADDU t,loc,4
273        STOU t,g,8*rJ    g[rJ] ← loc + 4.
274        INCL xxx,8
275        SUBU 1l,1l,xxx    Decrease rL by X + 1.
276        ADDU oo,oo,xxx    Increase rO by 8(X + 1).
277        JMP  Update      Finish the command. ■

```

Special routines are needed also to simulate POP, SAVE, UNSAVE, and several other opcodes including RESUME. Those routines deal with interesting details about MMIX, and we will consider them in the exercises; but we'll skip them for now, since they do not involve any techniques related to interpretive routines that we haven't seen already.

We might as well present the code for SYNC and TRIP, however, since those routines are so simple. (Indeed, there's nothing to do for "SYNC XYZ" except to check that  $XYZ \leq 3$ , since we aren't simulating cache memory.) Furthermore, we will take a look at the code for TRAP, which is interesting because it illustrates the important technique of a jump table for multiway switching:

```

278 Sync    BNZ  xx,Error    Branch if X ≠ 0.
279          CMPU t,yz,4
280          BNN  t,Error    Branch if YZ ≥ 4.
281          JMP  Update      Finish the command.
282 Trip     SET  xx,0        Initiate a trip to location 0.
283          JMP  TakeTrip    (See exercise 13.)
284 Trap     STOU inst_ptr,g,8*rWW g[rWW] ← inst_ptr.
285 OH GREG #8000000000000000
286          ADDU t,inst,0B
287          STOU t,g,8*rXX    g[rXX] ← inst + 263.
288          STOU y,g,8*rYY    g[rYY] ← y.
289          STOU z,g,8*rZZ    g[rZZ] ← z.
290          SRU  y,inst,6
291          CMPU t,y,4*11
292          BNN  t,Error    Branch if X ≠ 0 or Y > Ftell.
293          LDOU t,g,c255    t ← g[255].

```

|     |             |               |                                   |
|-----|-------------|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| 294 | OH GREG @+4 |               |                                   |
| 295 | GO          | y,0B,y        | Jump to @ + 4 + 4Y.               |
| 296 | JMP         | SimHalt       | Y = Halt: Jump to SimHalt.        |
| 297 | JMP         | SimFopen      | Y = Fopen: Jump to SimFopen.      |
| 298 | JMP         | SimFclose     | Y = Fclose: Jump to SimFclose.    |
| 299 | JMP         | SimFread      | Y = Fread: Jump to SimFread.      |
| 300 | JMP         | SimFgets      | Y = Fgets: Jump to SimFgets.      |
| 301 | JMP         | SimFgetws     | Y = Fgetws: Jump to SimFgetws.    |
| 302 | JMP         | SimFwrite     | Y = Fwrite: Jump to SimFwrite.    |
| 303 | JMP         | SimFputs      | Y = Fputs: Jump to SimFputs.      |
| 304 | JMP         | SimFputws     | Y = Fputws: Jump to SimFputws.    |
| 305 | JMP         | SimFseek      | Y = Fseek: Jump to SimFseek.      |
| 306 | JMP         | SimFtell      | Y = Ftell: Jump to SimFtell.      |
| 307 | TrapDone    | STO t,g,8*rBB | Set g[rBB] ← t.                   |
| 308 |             | STO t,g,c255  | A trap ends with g[255] ← g[rBB]. |
| 309 |             | JMP Update    | Finish the command. ■             |

(See exercises 15–17 for SimFopen, SimFclose, SimFread, etc.)

Now let's look at the master Info table (Table 1), which allows the simulator to deal rather painlessly with 256 different opcodes. Each table entry is an octabyte consisting of (i) a four-byte MMIX instruction, which will be invoked by the RESUME instruction on line 242; (ii) two bytes that define the simulated running time, one byte for  $\mu$  and one byte for  $v$ ; (iii) a byte that names a special register, if such a register ought to be loaded into  $x$  on line 182; and (iv) a byte that is the sum of eight 1-bit flags, expressing special properties of the opcode. For example, the info for opcode FIX is

FIX x,0,z; BYTE 0,4,0,#26;

it means that (i) the instruction FIX x,0,z should be performed, to round a floating point number to a fixed point integer; (ii) the simulated running time should be increased by  $0\mu + 4v$ ; (iii) no special register is needed as an input operand; and (iv) the flag byte

$$\#26 = X\_is\_dest\_bit + Y\_is\_immed\_bit + Z\_is\_source\_bit$$

determines the treatment of registers  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$ . (The Y\_is\_immed\_bit actually causes the Y field of the simulated instruction to be inserted into the Y field of "FIX x,0,z"; see line 202.)

One interesting aspect of the Info table is that the RESUME command of line 242 executes the instruction as if it were in location Done-4, since  $rW = Done$ . Therefore, if the instruction is a JMP, the address must be relative to Done-4; but MMIXAL always assembles JMP commands with an address relative to the assembled location @. We trick the assembler into doing the right thing by writing, for example, "JMP Trap+@-0", where 0 is defined to equal Done-4. Then the RESUME command will indeed jump to location Trap as desired.

After we have executed the special instruction inserted by RESUME, we normally get to location Done. From here on everything is anticlimactic; but

**Table 1**  
MASTER INFORMATION TABLE FOR SIMULATOR CONTROL

|                                    |         |                                 |           |
|------------------------------------|---------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| 0 IS Done-4                        |         | LDB x,res,0; BYTE 1,1,0,#aa     | (LDB)     |
| LOC Info                           |         | LDB x,res,0; BYTE 1,1,0,#a9     | (LDBI)    |
| JMP Trap+@-0; BYTE 0,5,0,#0a       | (TRAP)  | ...                             |           |
| FCMP x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#2a         | (FCMP)  | JMP Cswap+@-0; BYTE 2,2,0,#ba   | (CSWAP)   |
| FUN x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#2a          | (FUN)   | JMP Cswap+@-0; BYTE 2,2,0,#b9   | (CSWAPI)  |
| FEQL x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#2a         | (FEQL)  | LDUNC x,res,0; BYTE 1,1,0,#aa   | (LDUNC)   |
| FADD x,y,z; BYTE 0,4,0,#2a         | (FADD)  | LDUNC x,res,0; BYTE 1,1,0,#a9   | (LDUNCI)  |
| FIX x,0,z; BYTE 0,4,0,#26          | (FIX)   | JMP Error+@-0; BYTE 0,1,0,#2a   | (LDVTS)   |
| FSUB x,y,z; BYTE 0,4,0,#2a         | (FSUB)  | JMP Error+@-0; BYTE 0,1,0,#29   | (LDVTSI)  |
| FIXU x,0,z; BYTE 0,4,0,#26         | (FIXU)  | SWYM 0; BYTE 0,1,0,#0a          | (PRELD)   |
| FLOT x,0,z; BYTE 0,4,0,#26         | (FLOT)  | SWYM 0; BYTE 0,1,0,#09          | (PRELDI)  |
| FLOT x,0,z; BYTE 0,4,0,#25         | (FLOTI) | SWYM 0; BYTE 0,1,0,#0a          | (PREGO)   |
| FLOTU x,0,z; BYTE 0,4,0,#26        | (FLOTU) | SWYM 0; BYTE 0,1,0,#09          | (PREGOI)  |
| ...                                |         | JMP Go+@-0; BYTE 0,3,0,#2a      | (GO)      |
| FMUL x,y,z; BYTE 0,4,0,#2a         | (FMUL)  | JMP Go+@-0; BYTE 0,3,0,#29      | (GOI)     |
| FCMPE x,y,z; BYTE 0,4,rE,#2a       | (FCMPE) | STB x,res,0; BYTE 1,1,0,#9a     | (STB)     |
| FUNE x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,rE,#2a        | (FUNE)  | STB x,res,0; BYTE 1,1,0,#99     | (STBI)    |
| FEQLE x,y,z; BYTE 0,4,rE,#2a       | (FEQLE) | ...                             |           |
| FDIV x,y,z; BYTE 0,40,0,#2a        | (FDIV)  | STO xx,res,0; BYTE 1,1,0,#8a    | (STCO)    |
| FSQRT x,0,z; BYTE 0,40,0,#26       | (FSQRT) | STO xx,res,0; BYTE 1,1,0,#89    | (STCOI)   |
| FREM x,y,z; BYTE 0,4,0,#2a         | (FREM)  | STUNC x,res,0; BYTE 1,1,0,#9a   | (STUNC)   |
| FINT x,0,z; BYTE 0,4,0,#26         | (FINT)  | STUNC x,res,0; BYTE 1,1,0,#99   | (STUNCI)  |
| MUL x,y,z; BYTE 0,10,0,#2a         | (MUL)   | SWYM 0; BYTE 0,1,0,#0a          | (SYNCD)   |
| MUL x,y,z; BYTE 0,10,0,#29         | (MULI)  | SWYM 0; BYTE 0,1,0,#09          | (SYNCIDI) |
| JMP MulU+@-0; BYTE 0,10,0,#2a      | (MULU)  | SWYM 0; BYTE 0,1,0,#0a          | (PREST)   |
| JMP MulU+@-0; BYTE 0,10,0,#29      | (MULUI) | SWYM 0; BYTE 0,1,0,#09          | (PRESTI)  |
| JMP Div+@-0; BYTE 0,60,0,#2a       | (DIV)   | SWYM 0; BYTE 0,1,0,#0a          | (SYNCID)  |
| JMP Div+@-0; BYTE 0,60,0,#29       | (DIVI)  | SWYM 0; BYTE 0,1,0,#09          | (SYNCIDI) |
| JMP DivU+@-0; BYTE 0,60,rD,#2a     | (DIVU)  | JMP PushGo+@-0; BYTE 0,3,0,#2a  | (PUSHGO)  |
| JMP DivU+@-0; BYTE 0,60,rD,#29     | (DIVUI) | JMP PushGo+@-0; BYTE 0,3,0,#29  | (PUSHGOI) |
| ADD x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#2a          | (ADD)   | OR x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#2a        | (OR)      |
| ADD x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#29          | (ADDI)  | OR x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#29        | (ORI)     |
| ADDU x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#2a         | (ADDU)  | ...                             |           |
| ...                                |         | SET x,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#20         | (SETH)    |
| CMPU x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#29         | (CMPUI) | SET x,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#20         | (SETMH)   |
| NEG x,0,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#26          | (NEG)   | ...                             |           |
| NEG x,0,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#25          | (NEGI)  | ANDN x,x,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#30      | (ANDNL)   |
| NEGU x,0,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#26         | (NEGU)  | SET inst_ptr,yz; BYTE 0,1,0,#41 | (JMP)     |
| NEGU x,0,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#25         | (NEGUI) | SET inst_ptr,yz; BYTE 0,1,0,#41 | (JMPB)    |
| SL x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#2a           | (SL)    | JMP PushJ+@-0; BYTE 0,1,0,#60   | (PUSHJ)   |
| ...                                |         | JMP PushJ+@-0; BYTE 0,1,0,#60   | (PUSHJB)  |
| BN x,BTaken+@-0; BYTE 0,1,0,#50    | (BN)    | SET x,yz; BYTE 0,1,0,#60        | (GETA)    |
| BN x,BTaken+@-0; BYTE 0,1,0,#50    | (BNB)   | SET x,yz; BYTE 0,1,0,#60        | (GETAB)   |
| BZ x,BTaken+@-0; BYTE 0,1,0,#50    | (BZ)    | JMP Put+@-0; BYTE 0,1,0,#02     | (PUT)     |
| ...                                |         | JMP Put+@-0; BYTE 0,1,0,#01     | (PUTI)    |
| PBNP x,PBTaken+@-0; BYTE 0,3,0,#50 | (PBNPB) | JMP Pop+@-0; BYTE 0,3,rJ,#00    | (POP)     |
| PBEV x,PBTaken+@-0; BYTE 0,3,0,#50 | (PBEV)  | JMP Resume+@-0; BYTE 0,5,0,#00  | (RESUME)  |
| PBEV x,PBTaken+@-0; BYTE 0,3,0,#50 | (PBEVB) | JMP Save+@-0; BYTE 20,1,0,#20   | (SAVE)    |
| CSN x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#3a          | (CSN)   | JMP Unsave+@-0; BYTE 20,1,0,#02 | (UNSAVE)  |
| CSN x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#39          | (CSNI)  | JMP Sync+@-0; BYTE 0,1,0,#01    | (SYNC)    |
| ...                                |         | SWYM x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#00      | (SWYM)    |
| ZSEV x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#2a         | (ZSEV)  | JMP Get+@-0; BYTE 0,1,0,#20     | (GET)     |
| ZSEV x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#29         | (ZSEVI) | JMP Trip+@-0; BYTE 0,5,0,#0a    | (TRIP)    |

Entries not shown here explicitly follow a pattern that is easily deduced from the examples shown. (See, for example, exercise 1.)

we can take satisfaction in the fact that an instruction has been simulated successfully and the current cycle is nearly finished. Only a few details still need to be wrapped up: We must store the result  $x$  in the appropriate place, if the `X_is_dest_bit` flag is present, and we must check if an arithmetic exception has triggered a trip interrupt:

```

500 Done    AND    t,f,X_is_dest_bit
501         BZ     t,1F          Branch unless $X is a destination.
502 XDone   STOU   x,xptr,0      Store x in simulated $X.
503 1H      GET    t,rA
504         AND    t,t,#ff       t ← new arithmetic exceptions.
505         OR     exc,exc,t      exc ← exc ∨ t.
506         AND    t,exc,U_BIT+X_BIT
507         CMPU   t,t,U_BIT
508         PBNZ   t,1F          Branch unless underflow is exact.
509 OH GREG  U_BIT<8
510         AND    t,aa,0B
511         BNZ    t,1F          Branch if underflow is enabled.
512         ANDNL  exc,U_BIT      Ignore U if exact and not enabled.
513 1H      PBZ    exc,Update
514         SRU    t,aa,8
515         AND    t,t,exc
516         PBZ    t,4F          Branch unless trip interrupt needed.
...                               (See exercise 13.)
539 4H      OR     aa,aa,exc     Record new exceptions in rA. █

```

Line number 500 is used here for convenience, although several hundred instructions and the entire `Info` table actually intervene between line 309 and this part of the program. Incidentally, the label `Done` on line 500 does not conflict with the label `Done` on line 137, because both of them define the same equivalent value for this symbol.

After line 505, register `exc` contains the bit codes for all arithmetic exceptions triggered by the instruction just simulated. At this point we must deal with a curious asymmetry in the rules for IEEE standard floating point arithmetic: An underflow exception (U) is suppressed unless the underflow trip has been enabled in `rA` or unless an inexact exception (X) has also occurred. (We had to enable the underflow trip in line 238 for precisely this reason; the simulator ends with the commands

```
LOC U_Handler; ORL exc,U_BIT; JMP Done (5)
```

so that `exc` will properly record underflow exceptions in cases where a floating point computation was exact but produced a denormal result.)

Finally — Hurray! — we are able to close the cycle of operations that began long ago at location `Fetch`. We update the runtime clocks, take a deep breath, and return to `Fetch` again:

```

540 OH GREG #0000000800000004
541 Update  MOR    t,f,0B        232mems + oops

```

```

542      ADDU cc,cc,t      Increase the simulated clock, rC.
543      ADDU uu,uu,1      Increase the usage counter, rU.
544      SUBU ii,ii,1      Decrease the interval counter, rI.
545 AllDone PBZ resuming,Fetch Go to Fetch if resuming = 0.
546      CMPU t,op,#F9      Otherwise set t ← [op = RESUME].
547      CSNZ resuming,t,0   Clear resuming if not resuming,
548      JMP Fetch          and go to Fetch. █

```

Our simulation program is now complete, except that we still must initialize everything properly. We assume that the simulator will be run with a command line that names a binary file. Exercise 20 explains the simple format of that file, which specifies what should be loaded into the simulated memory before simulation begins. Once the program has been loaded, we launch it as follows: At line 576 below, register `loc` will contain a location from which a simulated UNSAVE command will get the program off to a good start. (In fact, we simulate an UNSAVE that is being simulated by a simulated RESUME. The code is tricky, perhaps, but it works.)

```

549 Infile IS 3          (Handle for binary input file)
550 Main LDA Mem:head,Chunk0 Initialize MemFind.
551      ADDU Mem:alloc,Mem:head,Mem:nodesize
552      GET t,rN
553      INCL t,1
554      STOU t,g,8*rN      g[rN] ← (our rN) + 1.
555      LDOU t,$1,8        t ← binary file name (argv[1]).
556      STOU t,IOArgs
557      LDA t,IOArgs      (See line 010)
558      TRAP 0,Fopen,Infile Open the binary file.
559      BN t,Error
...
576      STOU loc,g,c255   g[255] ← place to UNSAVE.
577      SUBU arg,loc,8*13  arg ← place where $255 appears.
578      PUSHJ res,MemFind
579      LDOU inst_ptr,res,0 inst_ptr ← Main.
580      SET arg,#90
581      PUSHJ res,MemFind
582      LDTU x,res,0      x ← M4[#90].
583      SET resuming,1    resuming ← 1.
584      CSNZ inst_ptr,x,#90 If x ≠ 0, set inst_ptr ← #90.
585 OH GREG #FB<<24+255
586      STOU OB,g,8*rX     g[rX] ← "UNSAVE $255".
587      SET gg,c255        G ← 255.
588      JMP Fetch          Start the ball rolling.
589 Error NEG t,22         t ← -22 for error exit.
590 Exit TRAP 0,Halt,0     End of simulation.
591 LOC Global+8*rK; OCTA -1
592 LOC Global+8*rT; OCTA #8000000500000000
593 LOC Global+8*rTT; OCTA #8000000600000000
594 LOC Global+8*rV; OCTA #369c200400000000 █

```

The simulated program's **Main** starting address will be in the simulated register \$255 after the simulated **UNSAVE**. Lines 580–584 of this code implement a feature that wasn't mentioned in Section 1.3.2': If an instruction is loaded into location #90, the program begins there instead of at **Main**. (This feature allows a subroutine library to initialize itself before starting a user program at **Main**.)

Lines 591–594 initialize the simulated **rK**, **rT**, **rTT**, and **rV** to appropriate constant values. Then the program is finished; it ends with the trip-handler instructions of (5).

Whew! Our simulator has turned out to be pretty long—longer, in fact, than any other program that we will encounter in this book. But in spite of its length, the program above is incomplete in several respects because the author did not want to make it even longer:

- a) Several parts of the code have been left as exercises.
- b) The program simply branches to **Error** and quits, when it detects a problem. A decent simulator would distinguish between different types of error, and would have a way to keep going.
- c) The program doesn't gather any statistics, except for the total running time (**cc**) and the total number of instructions simulated (**uu**). A more complete program would, for example, remember how often the user guessed correctly with respect to branches versus probable branches; it would also record the number of times the **StackLoad** and **StackStore** subroutines need to access simulated memory. It might also analyze its own algorithms, studying for example the efficiency of the self-organizing search technique used by **MemFind**.
- d) The program has no diagnostic facilities. A useful simulator would, for example, allow interactive debugging, and would output selected snapshots of the simulated program's execution; such features would not be difficult to add. The ability to monitor a program easily is, in fact, one of the main reasons for the importance of interpretive routines in general.

## EXERCISES

1. [20] Table 1 shows the **Info** entries only for selected opcodes. What entries are appropriate for (a) opcode #3F (**SRUI**)? (b) opcode #55 (**PBPB**)? (c) opcode #D9 (**MUXI**)? (d) opcode #E6 (**INCML**)?
- ▶ 2. [26] How much time does it take the simulator to simulate the instructions (a) **ADDU \$255,\$Y,\$Z**; (b) **SHT \$X,\$Y,0**; (c) **PBNZ \$X,@-4**?
3. [23] Explain why  $\gamma \neq \alpha$  when **StackRoom** calls **StackStore** on line 097.
- ▶ 4. [20] Criticize the fact that **MemFind** never checks to see if **alloc** has gotten too large. Is this a serious blunder?
- ▶ 5. [20] If the **MemFind** subroutine branches to **Error**, it does not pop the register stack. How many items might be on the register stack at such a time?
6. [20] Complete the simulation of **DIV** and **DIVU** instructions, by filling in the missing code of lines 248–253.
7. [21] Complete the simulation of **CSWAP** instructions, by writing appropriate code.



8. [22] Complete the simulation of **GET** instructions, by writing appropriate code.
9. [23] Complete the simulation of **PUT** instructions, by writing appropriate code.
10. [24] Complete the simulation of **POP** instructions, by writing appropriate code.  
*Note:* If the normal action of **POP** as described in Section 1.4.1' would leave  $rL > rG$ , **MMIX** will pop entries off the top of the register stack so that  $rL = rG$ . For example, if the user pushes 250 registers down with **PUSHJ** and then says “**PUT rG,32; POP**”, only 32 of the pushed-down registers will survive.
11. [25] Complete the simulation of **SAVE** instructions, by writing appropriate code.  
*Note:* **SAVE** pushes all the local registers down and stores the entire register stack in memory, followed by  $\$G$ ,  $\$(G + 1)$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $\$255$ , followed by  $rB$ ,  $rD$ ,  $rE$ ,  $rH$ ,  $rJ$ ,  $rM$ ,  $rR$ ,  $rP$ ,  $rW$ ,  $rX$ ,  $rY$ , and  $rZ$  (in that order), followed by the octabyte  $2^{56}rG + rA$ .
12. [26] Complete the simulation of **UNSAVE** instructions, by writing appropriate code.  
*Note:* The very first simulated **UNSAVE** is part of the initial loading process (see lines 583–588), so it should not update the simulated clocks.
13. [27] Complete the simulation of trip interrupts, by filling in the missing code of lines 517–538.
14. [28] Complete the simulation of **RESUME** instructions, by writing appropriate code.  
*Note:* When  $rX$  is nonnegative, its most significant byte is called the “ropcode”; ropcodes 0, 1, 2 are available for user programs. Line 242 of the simulator uses ropcode 0, which simply inserts the lower half of  $rX$  into the instruction stream. Ropcode 1 is similar, but the instruction in  $rX$  is performed with  $y \leftarrow rY$  and  $z \leftarrow rZ$  in place of the normal operands; this variant is allowed only when the first hexadecimal digit of the inserted opcode is #0, #1, #2, #3, #6, #7, #C, #D, or #E. Ropcode 2 sets  $\$X \leftarrow rZ$  and  $\text{exc} \leftarrow Q$ , where  $X$  is the third byte from the right of  $rX$  and  $Q$  is the third byte from the left; this makes it possible to set the value of a register and simultaneously raise any subset of the arithmetic exceptions DVWIOUZX. Ropcodes 1 and 2 can be used only when  $\$X$  is not marginal. Your solution to this exercise should cause **RESUME** to set  $\text{resuming} \leftarrow 0$  if the simulated  $rX$  is negative, otherwise  $\text{resuming} \leftarrow (1, -1, -2)$  for ropcodes (0, 1, 2). You should also supply the code that is missing from lines 166–173.
- 15. [25] Write the routine **SimFputs**, which simulates the operation of outputting a string to the file corresponding to a given handle.
- 16. [25] Write the routine **SimFopen**, which opens a file corresponding to a given handle. (The simulator can use the same handle number as the user program.)
- 17. [25] Continuing the previous exercises, write the routine **SimFread**, which reads a given number of bytes from a file corresponding to a given handle.
- 18. [21] Would this simulator be of any use if **lring\_size** were less than 256, for example if **lring\_size** = 32?
19. [14] Study all the uses of the **StackRoom** subroutine (namely in line 218, line 268, and in the answer to exercise 11). Can you suggest a better way to organize the code? (See step 3 in the discussion at the end of Section 1.4.1'.)
20. [20] The binary files input by the simulator consist of one or more groups of octabytes each having the simple form

$$\lambda, x_0, x_1, \dots, x_{l-1}, 0$$

for some  $l \geq 0$ , where  $x_0, x_1, \dots$ , and  $x_{l-1}$  are nonzero; the meaning is

$$M_8[\lambda + 8k] \leftarrow x_k, \quad \text{for } 0 \leq k < l.$$

The file ends after the last group. Complete the simulator by writing **MMIX** code to load such input (lines 560–575 of the program). The final value of register **loc** should be the location of the last octabyte loaded, namely  $\lambda + 8(l - 1)$ .

- **21.** [20] Is the simulation program of this section able to simulate itself? If so, is it able to simulate itself simulating itself? And if so, is it ...?
- **22.** [40] Implement an efficient *jump trace* routine for **MMIX**. This is a program that records all transfers of control in the execution of another given program by recording a sequence of pairs  $(x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2), \dots$ , meaning that the given program jumped from location  $x_1$  to  $y_1$ , then (after performing the instructions in locations  $y_1, y_1 + 1, \dots, x_2$ ) it jumped from  $x_2$  to  $y_2$ , etc. [From this information it is possible for a subsequent routine to reconstruct the flow of the program and to deduce how frequently each instruction was performed.]

A trace routine differs from a simulator because it allows the traced program to occupy its normal memory locations. A jump trace modifies the instruction stream in memory, but does so only to the extent necessary to retain control. Otherwise it allows the machine to execute arithmetic and memory instructions at full speed. Some restrictions are necessary; for example, the program being traced shouldn't modify itself. But you should try to keep such restrictions to a minimum.

## ANSWERS TO EXERCISES

### SECTION 1.3.1'

1. #7d9 or #7D9.
2. (a) {B, D, F, b, d, f}. (b) {A, C, E, a, c, e}. An odd fact of life.
3. (Solution by Gregor N. Purdy.) 2 bits = 1 nyp; 2 nyps = 1 nybble; 2 nybbles = 1 byte. Incidentally, the word “byte” was coined in 1956 by members of IBM’s Stretch computer project; see W. Buchholz, *BYTE* 2, 2 (February 1977), 144.
4. 1000 MB = 1 gigabyte (GB), 1000 GB = 1 terabyte (TB), 1000 TB = 1 petabyte (PB), 1000 PB = 1 exabyte (EB), 1000 EB = 1 zettabyte (ZB), 1000 ZB = 1 yottabyte (YB), according to the 19th Conférence Générale des Poids et Mesures (1990).  
(Some people, however, use  $2^{10}$  instead of 1000 in these formulas, claiming for example that a kilobyte is 1024 bytes. To resolve the ambiguity, such units should preferably be called *large kilobytes*, *large megabytes*, etc., and denoted by KKB, MMB, ... to indicate their binary nature.)
5. If  $-2^{n-1} \leq x < 2^{n-1}$ , then  $-2^n < x - s(\alpha) < 2^n$ ; hence  $x \neq s(\alpha)$  implies that  $x \not\equiv s(\alpha) \pmod{2^n}$ . But  $s(\alpha) = u(\alpha) - 2^n[\alpha \text{ begins with } 1] \equiv u(\alpha) \pmod{2^n}$ .
6. Using the notation of the previous exercise, we have  $u(\bar{\alpha}) = 2^n - 1 - u(\alpha)$ ; hence  $u(\bar{\alpha}) + 1 \equiv -u(\alpha) \pmod{2^n}$ , and it follows that  $s(\bar{\alpha}) + 1 = -s(\alpha)$ . Overflow might occur, however, when adding 1. In that case  $\alpha = 10 \dots 0$ ,  $s(\alpha) = -2^{n-1}$ , and  $-s(\alpha)$  is not representable.
7. Yes. (See the discussion of shifting.)
8. The radix point now falls between rH and \$X. (In general, if the binary radix point is  $m$  positions from the end of \$Y and  $n$  positions from the end of \$Z, it is  $m + n$  positions from the end of the product.)
9. Yes, except when  $X = Y$ , or  $X = Z$ , or overflow occurs.
10. \$Y = #8000000000000000, \$Z = #ffffffffffff is the *only* example!
11. (a) True, because  $s(\$Y) \equiv u(\$Y)$  and  $s(\$Z) \equiv u(\$Z) \pmod{2^{64}}$  by exercise 5. (b) Clearly true if  $s(\$Y) \geq 0$  and  $s(\$Z) \geq 0$ , because  $s(\$Y) = u(\$Y)$  and  $s(\$Z) = u(\$Z)$  in such a case. Also true if  $\$Z = 0$  or  $\$Z = 1$  or  $\$Z = \$Y$  or  $\$Y = 0$ . Otherwise false.
12. If  $X \neq Y$ , say ‘ADDU \$X,\$Y,\$Z; CMPU carry,\$X,\$Y; ZSN carry,carry,1’. But if  $X = Y = Z$ , say ‘ZSN carry,\$X,1; ADDU \$X,\$X,\$X’.
13. Overflow occurs on signed addition if and only if \$Y and \$Z have the same sign but their unsigned sum has the opposite sign. Thus  
  
XOR \$0,\$Y,\$Z; ADDU \$X,\$Y,\$Z; XOR \$1,\$X,\$Y; ANDN \$1,\$1,\$0; ZSN ovfl,\$1,1  
  
determines the presence or absence of overflow when  $X \neq Y$ .

14. Interchange X and Y in the previous answer. (Overflow occurs when computing  $x = y - z$  if and only if it occurs when computing  $y = x + z$ .)

15. Let  $\dot{y}$  and  $\dot{z}$  be the sign bits of  $y$  and  $z$ , so that  $s(y) = y - 2^{64}\dot{y}$  and  $s(z) = z - 2^{64}\dot{z}$ ; we want to calculate  $s(y)s(z) \bmod 2^{128} = (yz - 2^{64}(\dot{y}z + y\dot{z})) \bmod 2^{128}$ . Thus the program `MULU $X,$Y,$Z; GET $0,rH; ZSN $1,$Y,$Z; SUBU $0,$0,$1; ZSN $1,$Z,$Y; SUBU $0,$0,$1` puts the desired octabyte in \$0.

16. After the instructions in the previous answer, check that the upper half is the sign extension of the lower half, by saying `'SR $1,$X,63; CMP $1,$0,$1; ZSNZ ovf1,$1,1'`.

17. Let  $a$  be the stated constant, which is  $(2^{65} + 1)/3$ . Then  $ay/2^{65} = y/3 + y/(3 \cdot 2^{65})$ , so  $\lfloor ay/2^{65} \rfloor = \lfloor y/3 \rfloor$  for  $0 \leq y < 2^{65}$ .

18. By a similar argument,  $\lfloor ay/2^{66} \rfloor = \lfloor y/5 \rfloor$  for  $0 \leq y < 2^{66}$  when  $a = (2^{66} + 1)/5 = \#cccccccccccccd$ .

19. This statement is widely believed, and it has been implemented by compiler writers who did not check the math. But it is *false* when  $z = 7, 21, 23, 25, 29, 31, 39, 47, 49, 53, 55, 61, 63, 71, 81, 89, \dots$ , and in fact for 189 odd divisors  $z$  less than 1000!

Let  $\epsilon = ay/2^{64+e} - y/z = (z - r)y/(2^{64+e}z)$ , where  $r = 2^{64+e} \bmod z$ . Then  $0 < \epsilon < 2/z$ , hence trouble can arise only when  $y \equiv -1 \pmod{z}$  and  $\epsilon \geq 1/z$ . It follows that the formula  $\lfloor ay/2^{64+e} \rfloor = \lfloor y/z \rfloor$  holds for all unsigned octabytes  $y$ ,  $0 \leq y < 2^{64}$ , if and only if it holds for the single value  $y = 2^{64} - 1 - (2^{64} \bmod z)$ .

(The formula is, however, always correct in the restricted range  $0 \leq y < 2^{63}$ . And Michael Yoder observes that high-multiplication by  $\lceil 2^{64+e+1}/z \rceil - 2^{64}$ , followed by addition of  $y$  and right-shift by  $e + 1$ , does work in general.)

20. `4ADDU $X,$Y,$Y; 4ADDU $X,$X,$X`.

21. SL sets \$X to zero, overflowing if \$Y was nonzero. SLU and SRU set \$X to zero. SR sets \$X to 64 copies of the sign bit of \$Y, namely to  $-\$Y < 0$ . (Notice that shifting left by  $-1$  does *not* shift right.)

22. Dull's program takes the wrong branch when the SUB instruction causes overflow. For example, it treats *every* nonnegative number as less than  $-2^{63}$ ; it treats  $2^{63} - 1$  as less than every negative number. Although no error arises when \$1 and \$2 have the same sign, or when the numbers in \$1 and \$2 are both less than  $2^{62}$  in absolute value, the correct formulation `'CMP $0,$1,$2; BN $0,Case1'` is much better. (Similar errors have been made by programmers and compiler writers since the 1950s, often causing significant and mysterious failures.)

23. `CMP $0,$1,$2; BNP $0,Case1`.

24. `ANDN`.

25. `XOR $X,$Y,$Z; SADD $X,$X,0`.

26. `ANDN $X,$Y,$Z`.

27. `BDIF $W,$Y,$Z; ADDU $X,$Z,$W; SUBU $W,$Y,$W`.

28. `BDIF $0,$Y,$Z; BDIF $X,$Z,$Y; OR $X,$0,$X`.

29. `NOR $0,$Y,0; BDIF $0,$0,$Z; NOR $X,$0,0`. (This sequence computes  $2^n - 1 - \max(0, (2^n - 1 - y) - z)$  in each byte position.)

30. `XOR $1,$0,$2; BDIF $1,$3,$1; SADD $1,$1,0` when  $\$2 = \#20202020202020$  and  $\$3 = \#0101010101010101$ .

31. `MXOR $1,$4,$0; SADD $1,$1,0` when  $\$4 = \#0101010101010101$ .

32.  $C_{ji}^T = C_{ij} = (A_{1i}^T \bullet B_{j1}^T) \circ \dots \circ (A_{ni}^T \bullet B_{jn}^T) = (B^T \circ A^T)_{ji}$  if  $\bullet$  is commutative.

**33.** MOR (or MXOR) with the constant #0180402010080402.

**34.** MOR \$X,\$Z,[#0080004000200010]; MOR \$Y,\$Z,[#0008000400020001]. (Here we use brackets to denote registers that contain auxiliary constants.)

To go back, also checking that an 8-bit code is sufficient:

```
PUT    rM,[#00ff00ff00ff00ff]
MOR    $0,$X,[#4020100804020180]
MUX    $1,$0,$Y
BNZ    $1,BadCase
MUX    $1,$Y,$0
MOR    $Z,$1,[#8020080240100401] ■
```

**35.** MOR \$X,\$Y,\$Z; MOR \$X,\$Z,\$X; here \$Z is the constant (14).

**36.** XOR \$0,\$Y,\$Z; MOR \$0,[-1],\$0. *Notes:* Changing XOR to BDIF gives a mask for the bytes where \$Y exceeds \$Z. Given such a mask, AND it with #8040201008040201 and MOR with #ff to get a one-byte encoding of the relevant byte positions.

**37.** Let the elements of the field be polynomials in the Boolean matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

For example, this matrix is  $m(\#402010080402018e)$ , and if we square it with MXOR we get the matrix  $m(\#2010080402018e47)$ . The sum and product of such field elements are then obtained by XOR and MXOR, respectively.

(A field with  $2^k$  elements for  $2 \leq k \leq 7$  is obtained in a similar way from polynomials in the matrices #0103, #020105, #04020109, #0804020112, #100804020121, #20100804020141. Matrices of size up to  $16 \times 16$  can be represented as four octabytes; then multiplication requires eight MXORs and four XORs. We can, however, do multiplication in a field of  $2^{16}$  elements by performing only five MXORs and three XORs, if we represent the large field as a quadratic extension of the field of  $2^8$  elements.)

**38.** It sets \$1 to the sum of the eight signed bytes initially in \$0; it also sets \$2 to the rightmost nonzero such byte, or zero; and it sets \$0 to zero. (Changing SR to SRU would treat the bytes as unsigned. Changing SLU to SL would often overflow.)

**39.** The assumed running times are (a) ( $3v$  or  $2v$ ) versus  $2v$ ; (b) ( $4v$  or  $3v$ ) versus  $2v$ ; (c) ( $4v$  or  $3v$ ) versus  $3v$ ; (d) ( $v$  or  $4v$ ) versus  $2v$ ; (e) ( $2v$  or  $5v$ ) versus  $2v$ ; (f) ( $2v$  or  $5v$ ) versus  $3v$ . So we should use the conditional instructions in cases (a,d) and (c,f), unless \$0 is negative with probability  $> 2/3$ ; in the latter case we should use the PBN variants, (d) and (f). The conditionals always win in cases (b,e).

If the ADDU commands had been ADD, the instructions would not have been equivalent, because of possible overflows.

**40.** Suppose you G0 to address #101; this sets @  $\leftarrow$  #101. The tetrabyte  $M_4[\#101]$  is the same as the tetrabyte  $M_4[\#100]$ . If the opcode of that instruction is, say, PUSHJ, register rJ will be set to #105. Similarly, if that instruction is GETA \$0,@, register \$0 will be set to #101. In such situations the value for @ in MMIX assembly language is slightly different from the actual value during program execution.

Programmers could use these principles to send some sort of signal to a subroutine, based on the two trailing bits of @. (Tricky, but hey, why not use the bits we've got?)

41. (a) True. (b) True. (c) True. (d) False, but true with SRU in place of SR.

42. (a) `NEGU $1,$0; CSNN $1,$0,$0`. (b) `ANDN $1,$0,[#8000000000000000]`.

43. Trailing zeros (solution by J. Dallos): `SUBU $0,$Z,1; SADD $0,$0,$Z`.

Leading zeros: `FLOTU $0,1,$Z; SRU $0,$0,52; SUB $0,[1086],$0`. (If \$Z could be zero, add the command `CSZ $0,$Z,64`.) This is the shortest program, but not the fastest; we save 2v if we reverse all bits (exercise 35) and count *trailing* zeros.

44. Use “high tetra arithmetic,” in which each 32-bit number appears in the *left* half of a register. `LDHT` and `STHT` load and store such quantities (see exercise 7); `SETMH` loads an immediate constant. To add, subtract, multiply, or divide high tetras \$Y and \$Z, producing a high tetra \$X with correct attention to integer overflow and divide check, the following commands work perfectly: (a) `ADD $X,$Y,$Z`. (b) `SUB $X,$Y,$Z`. (c) `SR $X,$Z,32; MUL $X,$Y,$X` (assuming that we have  $X \neq Y$ ). (d) `DIV $X,$Y,$Z; SL $X,$X,32`; now rR is the high tetra remainder.

46. It causes a trip to location 0.

47. #DF is `MXORI` (“multiple exclusive-or immediate”); #55 is `PBPB` (“probable branch positive backward”). But in a program we use the names `MXOR` and `PBP`; the assembler silently adds the I and B when required.

48. `STO` and `STOU`; also the “immediate” variants `LDOI` and `LDOUI`, `STOI` and `STOUI`; also `NEGI` and `NEGUI`, although `NEG` is not equivalent to `NEGU`; also any two of the four opcodes `FLOTI`, `FLOTUI`, `SFLOTI`, and `SFLOTUI`.

(Every `MMIX` operation on signed numbers has a corresponding operation on unsigned numbers, obtained by adding 2 to the opcode. This consistency makes the machine design easier to learn, the machine easier to build, and the compilers easier to write. But of course it also makes the machine less versatile, because it leaves no room for other operations that might be desired.)

49. Octabyte `M8[0]` is set to #0000010000000001; rH is set to #0000012343210000; `M2[#0244420000000122]` is set to #0121; rA is set to #00041 (because overflow occurs on the `STW`); rB is set to `f(7) = #401c000000000000`; and `$1 ← #6ff8ffffffffff`. (Also `rL ← 2`, if rL was originally 0 or 1.) We assume that the program is not located in such a place that the `STCO`, `STB`, or `STW` instructions could clobber it.

50.  $4\mu + 34v = v + (\mu + v) + v + (\mu + v) + (\mu + v) + v + v + 10v + v + (\mu + v) + v + 4v + v + v + v + v + 3v + v + v + v$ .

|              |          |          |          |          |          |
|--------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 51. 35010001 | a0010101 | 2e010101 | a5010101 | f6000001 | c4010101 |
| b5010101     | 8e010101 | 1a010101 | db010101 | c7010101 | 3d010101 |
| 33010101     | e4010001 | f7150001 | 08010001 | 5701ffff | 3f010101 |

52. Opcodes `ADDI`, `ADDUI`, `SUBI`, `SUBUI`, `SLI`, `SLUI`, `SRI`, `SRUI`, `ORI`, `XORI`, `ANDNI`, `BDIFI`, `WDIFI`, `TDIFI`, `ODIFI`:  $X = Y = 255$ ,  $Z = 0$ . Opcode `MULI`:  $X = Y = 255$ ,  $Z = 1$ . Opcodes `INCH`, `INCMH`, `INCML`, `INCL`, `ORH`, `ORMH`, `ORML`, `ORL`, `ANDNH`, `ANDNMH`, `ANDNML`, `ANDNL`:  $X = 255$ ,  $Y = Z = 0$ . Opcodes `OR`, `AND`, `MUX`:  $X = Y = Z = 255$ . Opcodes `CSN`, `CSZ`, ..., `CSEV`:  $X = Z = 255$ ,  $Y$  arbitrary. Opcodes `BN`, `BZ`, ..., `PBEV`:  $X$  arbitrary,  $Y = 0$ ,  $Z = 1$ . Opcode `JMP`:  $X = Y = 0$ ,  $Z = 1$ . Opcodes `PRELD`, `PRELDI`, `PREGO`, `PREGOI`, `SWYM`:  $X, Y, Z$  arbitrary. (Subtle point: An instruction that sets register \$X is not a no-op when X is marginal, because it causes rL to increase; and all registers except \$255 are marginal when rL = 0 and rG = 255.)

53. MULU, MULUI, PUT, PUTI, UNSAVE.

54. FCMP, FADD, FIX, FSUB, ..., FCMPE, FEQL, ..., FINT, MUL, MULI, DIV, DIVI, ADD, ADDI, SUB, SUBI, NEG, SL, SLI, STB, STBI, STW, STWI, STT, STTI, STSF, STSFI, PUT, PUTI, UNSAVE. (This was not quite a fair question, because the complete rules for floating point operations appear only elsewhere. One fine point is that FCMP might change the I\_BIT of rA, if \$Y or \$Z is Not-a-Number, but FEQL and FUN never cause exceptions.)

55. FCMP, FUN, ..., SRUI, CSN, CSNI, ..., LDUNCI, GO, GOI, PUSHGO, PUSHGOI, OR, ORI, ..., ANDNL, PUSHJ, PUSHJB, GETA, GETAB, PUT, PUTI, POP, SAVE, UNSAVE, GET.

56. *Minimum space:*

|      |          |     |               |
|------|----------|-----|---------------|
| LDO  | \$1, x   | MUL | \$0, \$0, \$1 |
| SET  | \$0, \$1 | SUB | \$2, \$2, 1   |
| SETL | \$2, 12  | PBP | \$2, @-4*2    |

Space =  $6 \times 4 = 24$  bytes, time =  $\mu + 149v$ . Faster solutions are possible.

*Minimum time:* The assumption that  $|x^{13}| \leq 2^{63}$  implies that  $|x| < 2^5$  and  $x^8 < 2^{39}$ . The following solution, based on an idea of Y. N. Patt, exploits this fact.

|      |                |                                                    |
|------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| LDO  | \$0, x         | $\$0 = x$                                          |
| MUL  | \$1, \$0, \$0  | $\$1 = x^2$                                        |
| MUL  | \$1, \$1, \$1  | $\$1 = x^4$                                        |
| SL   | \$2, \$1, 25   | $\$2 = 2^{25}x^4$                                  |
| SL   | \$3, \$0, 39   | $\$3 = 2^{39}x$                                    |
| ADD  | \$3, \$3, \$1  | $\$3 = 2^{39}x + x^4$                              |
| MULU | \$1, \$3, \$2  | $u(\$1) = 2^{25}x^8, rH = x^5 + 2^{25}x^4 [x < 0]$ |
| GET  | \$2, rH        | $\$2 = x^5 \text{ (modulo } 2^{25})$               |
| PUT  | rM, [#1ffffff] |                                                    |
| MUX  | \$2, \$2, \$0  | $\$2 = x^5$                                        |
| SRU  | \$1, \$1, 25   | $\$1 = x^8$                                        |
| MUL  | \$0, \$1, \$2  | $\$0 = x^{13}$                                     |

Space =  $12 \times 4 = 48$  bytes, time =  $\mu + 48v$ . At least five multiplications are “necessary,” according to the theory developed in Section 4.6.3; yet this program uses only four! And in fact there is a way to avoid multiplication altogether.

*True minimum time:* As R. W. Floyd points out, we have  $|x| \leq 28$ , so the minimum execution time is achieved by referring to a table (unless  $\mu > 45v$ ):

|            |                                            |                |
|------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------|
| LDO        | \$0, x                                     | $\$0 = x$      |
| 8ADDU      | \$0, \$0, [Table]                          |                |
| LDO        | \$0, \$0, 8*28                             | $\$0 = x^{13}$ |
| ...        |                                            |                |
| Table OCTA | -28*28*28*28*28*28*28*28*28*28*28*28*28*28 |                |
| OCTA       | -27*27*27*27*27*27*27*27*27*27*27*27*27*27 |                |
| ...        |                                            |                |
| OCTA       | 28*28*28*28*28*28*28*28*28*28*28*28*28*28  |                |

Space =  $3 \times 4 + 57 \times 8 = 468$  bytes, time =  $2\mu + 3v$ .

57. (1) An operating system can allocate high-speed memory more efficiently if program blocks are known to be “read-only.” (2) An instruction cache in hardware will be faster and less expensive if instructions cannot change. (3) Same as (2), with “pipeline” in place of “cache.” If an instruction is modified after entering a pipeline, the pipeline needs to be flushed; the circuitry needed to check this condition is complex and time-consuming. (4) Self-modifying code cannot be used by more than one process at once. (5) Self-modifying code can defeat techniques for “profiling” (that is, for computing the number of times each instruction is executed).

**SECTION 1.3.2'**

1. (a) It refers to the label of line 24. (b) No indeed. Line 23 would refer to line 24 instead of line 38; line 31 would refer to line 24 instead of line 21.

2. The current value of 9B will be a running count of the number of such lines that have appeared earlier.

3. Read in 100 octabytes from standard input; exchange their maximum with the last of them; exchange the maximum of the remaining 99 with the last of those; etc. Eventually the 100 octabytes will become completely sorted into nondecreasing order. The result is then written to the standard output. (Compare with Algorithm 5.2.3S.)

4. #2233445566778899. (Large values are reduced mod  $2^{64}$ .)

5. BYTE "silly"; but this trick is not recommended.

6. False; TETRA @,@ is not the same as TETRA @; TETRA @.

7. He forgot that relative addresses are to tetrabyte locations; the two trailing bits are ignored.

8. LOC 16\*((@+15)/16) or LOC -@/16\*-16 or LOC (@+15)&-16, etc.

9. Change 500 to 600 on line 02; change Five to Six on line 35. (Five-digit numbers are not needed unless 1230 or more primes are to be printed. Each of the first 6542 primes will fit in a single wyde.)

10.  $M_2[\#2000000000000000] = \#0002$ , and the following nonzero data goes into the text segment:

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| #100: #e3 fe 00 03 | #15c: #23 ff f6 00 |
| #104: #c1 fb f7 00 | #160: #00 00 07 01 |
| #108: #a6 fe f8 fb | #164: #35 fa 00 02 |
| #10c: #e7 fb 00 02 | #168: #20 fa fa f7 |
| #110: #42 fb 00 13 | #16c: #23 ff f6 1b |
| #114: #e7 fe 00 02 | #170: #00 00 07 01 |
| #118: #c1 fa f7 00 | #174: #86 f9 f8 fa |
| #11c: #86 f9 f8 fa | #178: #af f5 f8 00 |
| #120: #1c fd fe f9 | #17c: #23 ff f8 04 |
| #124: #fe fc 00 06 | #180: #1d f9 f9 0a |
| #128: #43 fc ff fb | #184: #fe fc 00 06 |
| #12c: #30 ff fd f9 | #188: #e7 fc 00 30 |
| #130: #4d ff ff f6 | #18c: #a3 fc ff 00 |
| #134: #e7 fa 00 02 | #190: #25 ff ff 01 |
| #138: #f1 ff ff f9 | #194: #5b f9 ff fb |
| #13c: #46 69 72 73 | #198: #23 ff f8 00 |
| #140: #74 20 46 69 | #19c: #00 00 07 01 |
| #144: #76 65 20 48 | #1a0: #e7 fa 00 64 |
| #148: #75 6e 64 72 | #1a4: #51 fa ff f4 |
| #14c: #65 64 20 50 | #1a8: #23 ff f6 19 |
| #150: #72 69 6d 65 | #1ac: #00 00 07 01 |
| #154: #73 0a 00 20 | #1b0: #31 ff fa 62 |
| #158: #20 20 00 00 | #1b4: #5b ff ff ed |

(Notice that SET becomes SETL in #100, but ORI in #104. The current location @ is aligned to #15c at line 38, according to rule 7(a).) When the program begins, rG will be #f5, and we will have \$248 = #200000000000003e8, \$247 = #ffffffffffffc1a, \$246 = #13c, \$245 = #2030303030000000.



We must also prove that there will be a sufficiently large prime less than  $n$  when  $n$  is prime, namely that the  $(k+1)$ st prime  $p_{k+1}$  is less than  $p_k^2 + p_k$ ; otherwise  $k$  would exceed  $j$  and  $\text{PRIME}[k]$  would be zero when we needed it to be large. The necessary proof follows from “Bertrand’s postulate”: If  $p$  is prime there is a larger prime less than  $2p$ .

|        |      |                                  |
|--------|------|----------------------------------|
| Title  | BYTE | "First Five Hundred Primes",#a,0 |
|        | LOC  | (@+3)&-4                         |
| NewLn  | BYTE | #a,0                             |
|        | LOC  | (@+3)&-4                         |
| Blanks | BYTE | " ".0                            |

13. Line 35 gets the new title; change BYTE to WYDE on lines 35–37. Change Fputs to Fputws in lines 39, 43, 55, 59. Change the constant in line 45 to #0020066006600660. Change BUF+4 to BUF+2\*4 on line 47. And change lines 50–52 to

Incidentally, the new title line might look like

Title WYDE 'أ', 'و', 'ل', ' ' , 'خ', 'م', 'س', ' ' , ..., 'ل', 'ي', 'ة'

14. We can, for example, replace lines 26–30 of Program P by

The new **FREM** instruction is performed 9597 times, not 9538, because the new test in step P7 is not quite as effective as before. In spite of this, the floating point calculations reduce the running time by  $426192v - 59\mu$ , a notable improvement (unless of course

$\mu/v > 7000$ ). An additional savings of  $38169v$  can be achieved if the primes are stored as short floats instead of as unsigned wydes.

The number of divisibility tests can actually be reduced to 9357 if we replace  $q$  by  $\sqrt{n} - 1.9999$  in step P7 (see the answer to exercise 11). But the extra subtractions cost more than they save, unless  $\mu/v > 15$ .

**15.** It prints a string consisting of a blank space followed by an asterisk followed by two blanks followed by an asterisk ... followed by  $k$  blanks followed by an asterisk ... followed by 74 blanks followed by an asterisk; a total of  $2+3+\dots+75 = \binom{76}{2} - 1 = 2849$  characters. The total effect is one of OP art.

**17.** The following subroutine returns zero if and only if the instruction is OK.

|          |        |                                 |                                              |
|----------|--------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| a        | IS     | #ffffff                         | Table entry when anything goes               |
| b        | IS     | #ffff04ff                       | Table entry when $Y \leq \text{ROUND\_NEAR}$ |
| c        | IS     | #001f00ff                       | Table entry for PUT and PUTI                 |
| d        | IS     | #ff000000                       | Table entry for RESUME                       |
| e        | IS     | #ffff0000                       | Table entry for SAVE                         |
| f        | IS     | #ff0000ff                       | Table entry for UNSAVE                       |
| g        | IS     | #ff000003                       | Table entry for SYNC                         |
| h        | IS     | #ffff001f                       | Table entry for GET                          |
| table    | GREG   | @                               |                                              |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,b,a,b,b,b,b,b,b,b,b   | 0x                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,b,a,b,a,a,a,a,a,a,a   | 1x                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a   | 2x                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a   | 3x                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a   | 4x                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a   | 5x                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a   | 6x                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a   | 7x                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a   | 8x                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,0,0,a,a,a,a,a,a | 9x                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a   | Ax                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a   | Bx                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a   | Cx                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a   | Dx                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a,a   | Ex                                           |
|          | TETRA  | a,a,a,a,a,a,c,c,a,d,e,f,g,a,h,a | Fx                                           |
| tetra    | IS     | \$1                             |                                              |
| maxXYZ   | IS     | \$2                             |                                              |
| InstTest | BN     | \$0,9F                          | Invalid if address is negative.              |
|          | LDTU   | tetra,\$0,0                     | Fetch the tetrabyte.                         |
|          | SR     | \$0,tetra,22                    | Extract its opcode (times 4).                |
|          | LDT    | maxXYZ,table,\$0                | Get $X_{\max}, Y_{\max}, Z_{\max}$ .         |
|          | BDIF   | \$0,tetra,maxXYZ                | Check if any max is exceeded.                |
|          | PBNP   | maxXYZ,9F                       | If not a PUT, we are done.                   |
|          | ANDNML | \$0,#ff00                       | Zero out the OP byte.                        |
|          | BNZ    | \$0,9F                          | Branch if any max is exceeded.               |
|          | MOR    | tetra,tetra,#4                  | Extract the X byte.                          |
|          | CMP    | \$0,tetra,18                    |                                              |
|          | CSP    | tetra,\$0,0                     | Set $X \leftarrow 0$ if $18 < X < 32$ .      |

```

          ODIF    $0,tetra,7      Set $0 ← X ÷ 7.
9H        POP     1,0             Return $0 as the answer. █

```

This solution does not consider a tetrabyte to be invalid if it would jump to a negative address, nor is 'SAVE \$0,0' called invalid (although \$0 can never be a global register).

**18.** The catch to this problem is that there may be several places in a row or column where the minimum or maximum occurs, and each is a potential saddle point.

*Solution 1:* In this solution we run through each row in turn, making a list of all columns in which the row minimum occurs and then checking each column on the list to see if the row minimum is also a column maximum. Notice that in all cases the terminating condition for a loop is that a register is  $\leq 0$ .

```

* Solution 1
t      IS      $255
a00    GREG    Data_Segment      Address of "a00"
a10    GREG    Data_Segment+8    Address of "a10"
ij     IS      $0                Element index and return register
j      GREG    0                 Column index
k      GREG    0                 Size of list of minimum indices
x      GREG    0                 Current minimum value
y      GREG    0                 Current element
Saddle SET    ij,9*8
RowMin SET    j,8
      LDB     x,a10,ij           Candidate for row minimum
2H     SET    k,0                Set list empty.
4H     INCL   k,1
      STB     j,a00,k            Put column index in list.
1H     SUB    ij,ij,1            Go left one.
      SUB    j,j,1
      BZ     j,ColMax            Done with row?
3H     LDB    y,a10,ij
      SUB    t,x,y
      PBN    t,1B                Is x still minimum?
      SET    x,y
      PBP    t,2B                New minimum?
      JMP    4B                 Remember another minimum.
ColMax LDB    $1,a00,k           Get column from list.
      ADD    j,$1,9*8-8
1H     LDB    y,a10,j
      CMP    t,x,y
      PBN    t,No                Is row min < column element?
      SUB    j,j,8
      PBP    j,1B                Done with column?
Yes    ADD    ij,ij,$1           Yes; ij ← index of saddle.
      LDA    ij,a10,ij
      POP    1,0
No     SUB    k,k,1              Is list empty?
      BP     k,ColMax            If not, try again.
      PBP    ij,RowMin          Have all rows been tried?
      POP    1,0                Yes; $0 = 0, no saddle. █

```

*Solution 2:* An infusion of mathematics gives a different algorithm.

**Theorem.** Let  $R(i) = \min_j a_{ij}$ ,  $C(j) = \max_i a_{ij}$ . The element  $a_{i_0 j_0}$  is a saddle point if and only if  $R(i_0) = \max_i R(i) = C(j_0) = \min_j C(j)$ .

*Proof.* If  $a_{i_0 j_0}$  is a saddle point, then for any fixed  $i$ ,  $R(i_0) = C(j_0) \geq a_{ij_0} \geq R(i)$ ; so  $R(i_0) = \max_i R(i)$ . Similarly  $C(j_0) = \min_j C(j)$ . Conversely, we have  $R(i) \leq a_{ij} \leq C(j)$  for all  $i$  and  $j$ ; hence  $R(i_0) = C(j_0)$  implies that  $a_{i_0 j_0}$  is a saddle point. ■

(This proof shows that we always have  $\max_i R(i) \leq \min_j C(j)$ . So there is no saddle point if and only if all the  $R$ 's are less than all the  $C$ 's.)

According to the theorem, it suffices to find the smallest column maximum, then to search for an equal row minimum.

```

* Solution 2
t      IS      $255
a00    GREG    Data_Segment      Address of "a00"
a10    GREG    Data_Segment+8    Address of "a10"
a20    GREG    Data_Segment+8*2  Address of "a20"
ij     GREG    0                 Element index
ii     GREG    0                 Row index times 8
j      GREG    0                 Column index
x      GREG    0                 Current maximum
y      GREG    0                 Current element
z      GREG    0                 Current min max
ans    IS      $0                 Return register

Phase1 SET     j,8                Start at column 8.
      SET     z,1000              z ← ∞ (more or less).
3H     ADD     ij,j,9*8-2*8
      LDB     x,a20,ij
1H     LDB     y,a10,ij
      CMP     t,x,y               Is x < y?
      CSN     x,t,y               If so, update the maximum.
2H     SUB     ij,ij,8            Move up one.
      PBP     ij,1B
      STB     x,a10,ij            Store column maximum.
      CMP     t,x,z               Is x < z?
      CSN     z,t,x               If so, update the min max.
      SUB     j,j,1               Move left a column.
      PBP     j,3B

Phase2 SET     ii,9*8-8           (At this point z = min_j C(j).)
3H     ADD     ij,ii,8            Prepare to search a row.
      SET     j,8
1H     LDB     x,a10,ij
      SUB     t,z,x               Is z > a_ij?
      PBP     t,No                There's no saddle in this row.
      PBN     t,2F
      LDB     x,a00,j             Is a_ij = C(j)?
      CMP     t,x,z
      CSZ     ans,t,ij            If so, remember a possible saddle point.

```

|    |     |             |                                |
|----|-----|-------------|--------------------------------|
| 2H | SUB | j,j,1       | Move left in row.              |
|    | SUB | ij,ij,1     |                                |
|    | PBP | j,1B        |                                |
|    | LDA | ans,a10,ans | A saddle point was found here. |
|    | POP | 1,0         |                                |
| No | SUB | ii,ii,8     |                                |
|    | PBP | ii,3B       | Try another row.               |
|    | SET | ans,0       |                                |
|    | POP | 1,0         | ans = 0; no saddle. ■          |

We leave it to the reader to invent a still better solution in which Phase 1 records all possible rows that are candidates for the row search in Phase 2. It is not necessary to search all rows, just those  $i_0$  for which  $C(j_0) = \min_j C(j)$  implies  $a_{i_0 j_0} = C(j_0)$ . Usually there is at most one such row.

In some trial runs with elements selected at random from  $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$ , Solution 1 required approximately  $147\mu + 863v$  to run, while Solution 2 took about  $95\mu + 510v$ . Given a matrix of all zeros, Solution 1 found a saddle point in  $26\mu + 188v$ , Solution 2 in  $96\mu + 517v$ .

If an  $m \times n$  matrix has *distinct* elements, and  $m \geq n$ , we can solve the problem by looking at only  $O(m+n)$  of them and doing  $O(m \log n)$  auxiliary operations. See Bienstock, Chung, Fredman, Schäffer, Shor, and Suri, *AMM* **98** (1991), 418–419.


**19.** Assume an  $m \times n$  matrix. (a) By the theorem in the answer to exercise 18, all saddle points of a matrix have the same value, so (under our assumption of distinct elements) there is at most one saddle point. By symmetry the desired probability is  $mn$  times the probability that  $a_{11}$  is a saddle point. This latter is  $1/(mn)!$  times the number of permutations with  $a_{12} > a_{11}, \dots, a_{1n} > a_{11}, a_{11} > a_{21}, \dots, a_{11} > a_{m1}$ ; and this is  $1/(m+n-1)!$  times the number of permutations of  $m+n-1$  elements in which the first is greater than the next  $(m-1)$  and less than the remaining  $(n-1)$ , namely  $(m-1)!(n-1)!$ . The answer is therefore

$$mn(m-1)!(n-1)!/(m+n-1)! = (m+n) \Big/ \binom{m+n}{n}.$$

In our case this is  $17/\binom{17}{8}$ , only one chance in 1430. (b) Under the second assumption, an entirely different method must be used since there can be multiple saddle points; in fact either a whole row or whole column must consist entirely of saddle points. The probability equals the probability that there is a saddle point with value zero plus the probability that there is a saddle point with value one. The former is the probability that there is at least one column of zeros; the latter is the probability that there is at least one row of ones. The answer is  $(1 - (1 - 2^{-m})^n) + (1 - (1 - 2^{-n})^m)$ ; in our case,  $924744796234036231/18446744073709551616$ , about 1 in 19.9. An approximate answer is  $n2^{-m} + m2^{-n}$ .

**20.** M. Hofri and P. Jacquet [*Algorithmica* **22** (1998), 516–528] have analyzed the case when the  $m \times n$  matrix entries are distinct and in random order. The running times of the two MMIX programs are then  $(mn + mH_n + 2m + 1 + (m+1)/(n-1))\mu + (6mn + 7mH_n + 5m + 11 + 7(m+1)/(n-1))v + O((m+n)^2/\binom{m+n}{m})$  and  $(m+1)n\mu + (5mn + 6m + 4n + 7H_n + 8)v + O(1/n) + O((\log n)^2/m)$ , respectively, as  $m \rightarrow \infty$  and  $n \rightarrow \infty$ , assuming that  $(\log n)/m \rightarrow 0$ .

**21.** Farey SET y,1; ... POP.

 This answer is the first of many in Volumes 1–3 for which *MMIX*masters are being asked to contribute elegant solutions. (See the website information on page ii.) The fourth edition of this book will present the best parts of the best programs submitted. Note: Please reveal your full name, including all middle names, if you enter this competition, so that proper credit can be given!

**22.** (a) Induction. (b) Let  $k \geq 0$  and  $X = ax_{k+1} - x_k$ ,  $Y = ay_{k+1} - y_k$ , where  $a = \lfloor (y_k + n)/y_{k+1} \rfloor$ . By part (a) and the fact that  $0 < Y \leq n$ , we have  $X \perp Y$  and  $X/Y > x_{k+1}/y_{k+1}$ . So if  $X/Y \neq x_{k+2}/y_{k+2}$  we have, by definition,  $X/Y > x_{k+2}/y_{k+2}$ . But this implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{Yy_{k+1}} &= \frac{Xy_{k+1} - Yx_{k+1}}{Yy_{k+1}} = \frac{X}{Y} - \frac{x_{k+1}}{y_{k+1}} \\ &= \left( \frac{X}{Y} - \frac{x_{k+2}}{y_{k+2}} \right) + \left( \frac{x_{k+2}}{y_{k+2}} - \frac{x_{k+1}}{y_{k+1}} \right) \\ &\geq \frac{1}{Yy_{k+2}} + \frac{1}{y_{k+1}y_{k+2}} = \frac{y_{k+1} + Y}{Yy_{k+1}y_{k+2}} \\ &> \frac{n}{Yy_{k+1}y_{k+2}} \geq \frac{1}{Yy_{k+1}}. \end{aligned}$$

*Historical notes:* C. Haros gave a (more complicated) rule for constructing such sequences, in *J. de l'École Polytechnique* **4**, 11 (1802), 364–368; his method was correct, but his proof was inadequate. Several years later, the geologist John Farey independently conjectured that  $x_k/y_k$  is always equal to  $(x_{k-1} + x_{k+1})/(y_{k-1} + y_{k+1})$  [*Philos. Magazine and Journal* **47** (1816), 385–386]; a proof was supplied shortly afterwards by A. Cauchy [*Bull. Société Philomathique de Paris* (3) **3** (1816), 133–135], who attached Farey's name to the series. For more of its interesting properties, see G. H. Hardy and E. M. Wright, *An Introduction to the Theory of Numbers*, Chapter 3.

**23.** The following routine should do reasonably well on most pipeline and cache configurations.

|      |      |        |    |       |        |    |      |        |
|------|------|--------|----|-------|--------|----|------|--------|
| a    | IS   | \$0    |    | SUB   | n,n,8  |    | STCO | 0,a,56 |
| n    | IS   | \$1    |    | ADD   | a,a,8  |    | ADD  | a,a,64 |
| z    | IS   | \$2    | 3H | AND   | t,a,63 |    | PBNN | t,4B   |
| t    | IS   | \$255  |    | PBNZ  | t,2B   | 5H | CMP  | t,n,8  |
|      |      |        |    | CMP   | t,n,64 |    | BN   | t,7F   |
| 1H   | STB  | z,a,0  |    | BN    | t,5F   | 6H | STCO | 0,a,0  |
|      | SUB  | n,n,1  | 4H | PREST | 63,a,0 |    | SUB  | n,n,8  |
|      | ADD  | a,a,1  |    | SUB   | n,n,64 |    | ADD  | a,a,8  |
| Zero | BZ   | n,9F   |    | CMP   | t,n,64 |    | CMP  | t,n,8  |
|      | SET  | z,0    |    | STCO  | 0,a,0  |    | PBNN | t,6B   |
|      | AND  | t,a,7  |    | STCO  | 0,a,8  | 7H | BZ   | n,9F   |
|      | BNZ  | t,1B   |    | STCO  | 0,a,16 | 8H | STB  | z,a,0  |
|      | CMP  | t,n,64 |    | STCO  | 0,a,24 |    | SUB  | n,n,1  |
|      | PBNN | t,3F   |    | STCO  | 0,a,32 |    | ADD  | a,a,1  |
|      | JMP  | 5F     |    | STCO  | 0,a,40 |    | PBNZ | n,8B   |
| 2H   | STCO | 0,a,0  |    | STCO  | 0,a,48 | 9H | POP  | █      |

**24.** The following routine merits careful study; comments are left to the reader. A faster program would be possible if we treated  $\$0 \equiv \$1$  (modulo 8) as a special case.

|        |      |                   |    |      |             |
|--------|------|-------------------|----|------|-------------|
| in     | IS   | \$2               |    | SUB  | \$1,\$1,8   |
| out    | IS   | \$3               |    | SRU  | out,out,1   |
| r      | IS   | \$4               |    | MUX  | in,in,out   |
| l      | IS   | \$5               |    | BDIF | t,ones,in   |
| m      | IS   | \$6               |    | AND  | t,t,m       |
| t      | IS   | \$7               |    | SRU  | mm,mm,r     |
| mm     | IS   | \$8               |    | PUT  | rM,mm       |
| tt     | IS   | \$9               |    | PBZ  | t,2F        |
| flip   | GREG | #0102040810204080 |    | JMP  | 5F          |
| ones   | GREG | #0101010101010101 | 3H | MUX  | out,tt,out  |
|        | LOC  | #100              |    | STOU | out,\$0,\$1 |
| StrCpy | AND  | in,\$0,#7         | 2H | SLU  | out,in,1    |
|        | SLU  | in,in,3           |    | LDOU | in,\$0,8    |
|        | AND  | out,\$1,#7        |    | INCL | \$0,8       |
|        | SLU  | out,out,3         |    | BDIF | t,ones,in   |
|        | SUB  | r,out,in          | 4H | SRU  | tt,in,r     |
|        | LDOU | out,\$1,0         |    | PBZ  | t,3B        |
|        | SUB  | \$1,\$1,\$0       |    | SRU  | mm,t,r      |
|        | NEG  | m,0,1             |    | MUX  | out,tt,out  |
|        | SRU  | m,m,in            |    | BNZ  | mm,1F       |
|        | LDOU | in,\$0,0          |    | STOU | out,\$0,\$1 |
|        | PUT  | rM,m              | 5H | INCL | \$0,8       |
|        | NEG  | mm,0,1            |    | SLU  | out,in,1    |
|        | BN   | r,1F              |    | SLU  | mm,t,1      |
|        | NEG  | l,64,r            | 1H | LDOU | in,\$0,\$1  |
|        | SLU  | tt,out,r          |    | MOR  | mm,mm,flip  |
|        | MUX  | in,in,tt          |    | SUBU | t,mm,1      |
|        | BDIF | t,ones,in         |    | ANDN | mm,mm,t     |
|        | AND  | t,t,m             |    | MOR  | mm,mm,flip  |
|        | SRU  | mm,mm,r           |    | SUBU | mm,mm,1     |
|        | PUT  | rM,mm             |    | PUT  | rM,mm       |
|        | JMP  | 4F                |    | MUX  | in,in,out   |
| 1H     | NEG  | l,0,r             |    | STOU | in,\$0,\$1  |
|        | INCL | r,64              |    | POP  | 0           |

The running time, approximately  $(n/4 + 4)\mu + (n + 40)v$  plus the time to POP, is less than the cost of the trivial code when  $n \geq 8$  and  $\mu \geq v$ .

**25.** We assume that register *p* initially contains the address of the first byte, and that this address is a multiple of 8. Other local or global registers *a*, *b*, ... have also been declared. The following solution starts by counting the wyde frequencies first, since this requires only half as many operations as it takes to count byte frequencies. Then the byte frequencies are obtained as row and column sums of a  $256 \times 256$  matrix.

**\* Cryptanalysis Problem (CLASSIFIED)**

|       | LOC  | Data_Segment           |                                |
|-------|------|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| count | GREG | @                      | Base address for wyde counts   |
|       | LOC  | @+8*(1<<16)            | Space for the wyde frequencies |
| freq  | GREG | @                      | Base address for byte counts   |
|       | LOC  | @+8*(1<<8)             | Space for the byte frequencies |
| p     | GREG | @                      |                                |
|       | BYTE | "abracadabraa",0,"abc" | Trivial test data              |

|        |      |                   |                                             |
|--------|------|-------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| ones   | GREG | #0101010101010101 |                                             |
|        | LOC  | #100              |                                             |
| 2H     | SRU  | b,a,45            | Isolate next wyde.                          |
|        | LDO  | c,count,b         | Load old count.                             |
|        | INCL | c,1               |                                             |
|        | STO  | c,count,b         | Store new count.                            |
|        | SLU  | a,a,16            | Delete one wyde.                            |
|        | PBNZ | a,2B              | Done with octabyte?                         |
|        |      |                   | } main loop, should run as fast as possible |
| Phase1 | LDOU | a,p,0             | Start here: Fetch the next eight bytes.     |
|        | INCL | p,8               |                                             |
|        | BDIF | t,ones,a          | Test if there's a zero byte.                |
|        | PBZ  | t,2B              | Do main loop, unless near the end.          |
| 2H     | SRU  | b,a,45            | Isolate next wyde.                          |
|        | LDO  | c,count,b         | Load old count.                             |
|        | INCL | c,1               |                                             |
|        | STO  | c,count,b         | Store new count.                            |
|        | SRU  | b,t,48            |                                             |
|        | SLU  | a,a,16            |                                             |
|        | BDIF | t,ones,a          |                                             |
|        | PBZ  | b,2B              | Continue unless done.                       |
| Phase2 | SET  | p,8*255           | Now get ready to sum rows and columns.      |
| 1H     | SL   | a,p,8             |                                             |
|        | LDA  | a,count,a         | $a \leftarrow$ address of row $p$ .         |
|        | SET  | b,8*255           |                                             |
|        | LDO  | c,a,0             |                                             |
|        | SET  | t,p               |                                             |
| 2H     | INCL | t,#800            |                                             |
|        | LDO  | x,count,t         | Element of column $p$                       |
|        | LDO  | y,a,b             | Element of row $p$                          |
|        | ADD  | c,c,x             |                                             |
|        | ADD  | c,c,y             |                                             |
|        | SUB  | b,b,8             |                                             |
|        | PBP  | b,2B              |                                             |
|        | STO  | c,freq,p          |                                             |
|        | SUB  | p,p,8             |                                             |
|        | PBP  | p,1B              |                                             |
|        | POP  |                   |                                             |

How long is “long”? This two-phase method is inferior to a simple one-phase approach when the string length  $n$  is less than  $2^{17}$ , but it takes only about 10/17 as much time as the one-phase scheme when  $n \approx 10^6$ . A slightly faster routine can be obtained by “unrolling” the inner loop, as in the next answer.

Another approach, which uses a jump table and keeps the counts in 128 registers, is worthy of consideration when  $\mu/v$  is large.

[This problem has a long history. See, for example, Charles P. Bourne and Donald F. Ford, “A study of the statistics of letters in English words,” *Information and Control* 4 (1961), 48–67.]

**26.** The wyde-counting trick in the previous solution will backfire if the machine’s primary cache holds fewer than  $2^{19}$  bytes, unless comparatively few of the wyde counts



are nonzero. Therefore the following program computes only one-byte frequencies. This code avoids stalls, in a conventional pipeline, by never using the result of a LDO in the immediately following instruction.

```

Start  LDOU a,p,0          INCL c,1
      INCL p,8            SRU bb,bb,53
      BDIF t,ones,a       STO c,freq,b
      BNZ t,3F            LDO c,freq,bb
2H     SRU b,a,53          LDOU a,p,0
      LDO c,freq,b         INCL p,8
      SLU bb,a,8           INCL c,1
      INCL c,1            BDIF t,ones,a
      SRU bb,bb,53        STO c,freq,bb
      STO c,freq,b        PBZ t,2B
      LDO c,freq,bb       3H SRU b,a,53
      SLU b,a,16          LDO c,freq,b
      INCL c,1            INCL c,1
      SRU b,b,53          STO c,freq,b
      STO c,freq,bb       SRU b,b,3
      LDO c,freq,b        SLU a,a,8
      ...                PBNZ b,3B
      SLU bb,a,56         POP

```

Another solution works better on a superscalar machine that issues two instructions simultaneously:

```

Start  LDOU a,p,0          SLU bbb,a,48
      INCL p,8            SLU bbbb,a,56
      BDIF t,ones,a       INCL c,1
      SLU bb,a,8           INCL cc,1
      BNZ t,3F            SRU bbb,bbb,53
2H     SRU b,a,53          SRU bbbb,bbbb,53
      SRU bb,bb,53        STO c,freq,b
      LDO c,freq,b         STO cc,freqq,bb
      LDO cc,freqq,bb      LDO c,freq,bbb
      SLU bbb,a,16        LDO cc,freqq,bbbb
      SLU bbbb,a,24       LDOU a,p,0
      INCL c,1            INCL p,8
      INCL cc,1           INCL c,1
      SRU bbb,bbb,53      INCL cc,1
      SRU bbbb,bbbb,53    BDIF t,ones,a
      STO c,freq,b        SLU bb,a,8
      STO cc,freqq,bb     STO c,freq,bbb
      LDO c,freq,bbb      STO cc,freqq,bbbb
      LDO cc,freqq,bbbb   PBZ t,2B
      SLU b,a,32          3H SRU b,a,53
      SLU bb,a,40         ...
      ...

```

In this case we must keep two separate frequency tables (and combine them at the end); otherwise an “aliasing” problem would lead to incorrect results in cases where **b** and **bb** both represent the same character.

27.

(a)

```

t    IS    $255
n    IS    $0
new  GREG
old  GREG
phi  GREG
rt5  GREG
acc  GREG
f    GREG
      LOC   #100
Main FLOT   t,5
      FSQRT rt5,t
      FLOT   t,1
      FADD   phi,t,rt5
      INCH   phi,#fff0
      FDIV   acc,phi,rt5
      SET    n,1
      SET    new,1
1H   ADDU   new,new,old
      INCL   n,1
      CMPU   t,new,old
      BN     t,9F
      SUBU   old,new,old
      FMUL   acc,acc,phi
      FIXU   f,acc
      CMP    t,f,new
      PBZ    t,1B
      SET    t,1
9H   TRAP   0,Halt,0 █

```

(b)


```

t    IS    $255
n    IS    $0
new  GREG
old  GREG
phii GREG   #9e3779b97f4a7c16
lo   GREG
hi   GREG
hihi GREG
      LOC   #100
Main SET    n,2
      SET    old,1
      SET    new,1
1H   ADDU   new,new,old
      INCL   n,1
      CMPU   t,new,old
      BN     t,9F
      SUBU   old,new,old
      MULU   lo,old,phii
      GET    hi,rH
      ADDU   hi,hi,old
      ADDU   hihi,hi,1
      CSN    hi,lo,hihi
      CMP    t,hi,new
      PBZ    t,1B
      SET    t,1
9H   TRAP   0,Halt,0 █

```

Program (a) halts with  $t = 1$  and  $n = 71$ ; the floating point representation of  $\phi$  is slightly high, hence errors ultimately accumulate until  $\phi^{71}/\sqrt{5}$  is approximated by  $F_{71} + .7$ , which rounds to  $F_{71} + 1$ . Program (b) halts with  $t = -1$  and  $n = 94$ ; unsigned overflow occurs before the approximation fails. (Indeed,  $F_{93} < 2^{64} < F_{94}$ .)

29. The last man is in position 15. The total time before output is ...

 *MMIXmasters, please help! What is the neatest program that is analogous to the solution to exercise 1.3.2–22 in the third edition? Also, what would D. Ingalls do in the new situation? (Find a trick analogous to his previous scheme, but do not use self-modifying code.)*

An asymptotically faster method appears in exercise 5.1.1–5.

30. Work with scaled numbers,  $R_n = 10^n r_n$ . Then  $R_n(1/m) = R$  if and only if  $10^n/(R + \frac{1}{2}) \leq m < 10^n/(R - \frac{1}{2})$ ; thus we find  $m_{k+1} = \lfloor (2 \cdot 10^n - 1)/(2R - 1) \rfloor$ .

**\* Sum of Rounded Harmonic Series**

|      |      |    |                   |
|------|------|----|-------------------|
| MaxN | IS   | 10 |                   |
| a    | GREG | 0  | Accumulator       |
| c    | GREG | 0  | $2 \cdot 10^n$    |
| d    | GREG | 0  | Divisor or digit  |
| r    | GREG | 0  | Scaled reciprocal |


|      |       |                |                        |
|------|-------|----------------|------------------------|
| s    | GREG  | 0              | Scaled sum             |
| m    | GREG  | 0              | $m_k$                  |
| mm   | GREG  | 0              | $m_{k+1}$              |
| nn   | GREG  | 0              | $n - \text{MaxN}$      |
|      | LOC   | Data_Segment   |                        |
| dec  | GREG  | @+3            | Decimal point location |
|      | BYTE  | " . "          |                        |
|      | LOC   | #100           |                        |
| Main | NEG   | nn,MaxN-1      | $n \leftarrow 1.$      |
|      | SET   | c,20           |                        |
| 1H   | SET   | m,1            |                        |
|      | SR    | s,c,1          | $S \leftarrow 10^n.$   |
|      | JMP   | 2F             |                        |
| 3H   | SUB   | a,c,1          |                        |
|      | SL    | d,r,1          |                        |
|      | SUB   | d,d,1          |                        |
|      | DIV   | mm,a,d         |                        |
| 4H   | SUB   | a,mm,m         |                        |
|      | MUL   | a,r,a          |                        |
|      | ADD   | s,s,a          |                        |
|      | SET   | m,mm           | $k \leftarrow k + 1.$  |
| 2H   | ADD   | a,c,m          |                        |
|      | 2ADDU | d,m,2          |                        |
|      | DIV   | r,a,d          |                        |
|      | PBNZ  | r,3B           |                        |
| 5H   | ADD   | a,nn,MaxN+1    |                        |
|      | SET   | d,#a           | Newline                |
|      | JMP   | 7F             |                        |
| 6H   | DIV   | s,s,10         | Convert digits.        |
|      | GET   | d,rR           |                        |
|      | INCL  | d,'0'          |                        |
| 7H   | STB   | d,dec,a        |                        |
|      | SUB   | a,a,1          |                        |
|      | BZ    | a,@-4          |                        |
|      | PBNZ  | s,6B           |                        |
| 8H   | SUB   | \$255,dec,3    |                        |
|      | TRAP  | 0,Fputs,StdOut |                        |
| 9H   | INCL  | nn,1           | $n \leftarrow n + 1.$  |
|      | MUL   | c,c,10         |                        |
|      | PBNP  | nn,1B          |                        |
|      | TRAP  | 0,Halt,0       | ■                      |

The outputs are respectively 3.7, 6.13, 8.445, 10.7504, 13.05357, 15.356255, 17.6588268, 19.96140681, 22.263991769, 24.5665766342, in  $82\mu + 40659359v$ . The calculation would work for  $n$  up to 17 without overflow, but the running time is of order  $10^{n/2}$ . (We could save about half the time by calculating  $R_n(1/m)$  directly when  $m < 10^{n/2}$ , and by using the fact that  $R_n(m_{k+1}) = R_n(m_k - 1)$  for larger values of  $m$ .)

**31.** Let  $N = \lfloor 2 \cdot 10^n / (2m+1) \rfloor$ . Then  $S_n = H_N + O(N/10^n) + \sum_{k=1}^m ([2 \cdot 10^n / (2k-1)] - [2 \cdot 10^n / (2k+1)])k/10^n = H_N + O(m^{-1}) + O(m/10^n) - 1 + 2H_{2m} - H_m = n \ln 10 + 2\gamma - 1 + 2 \ln 2 + O(10^{-n/2})$  if we sum by parts and set  $m \approx 10^{n/2}$ .

Our approximation to  $S_{10}$  is  $\approx 24.5665766209$ , which is closer than predicted.

**32.** To make the problem more challenging, the following ingenious solution due in part to — uses a lot of *trickery* in order to reduce execution time. Can the reader squeeze out any more nanoseconds?

 *MMIXmasters: Please help fill in the blanks! Note, for example, that remainders mod 7, 19, and 30 are most rapidly computed by **FREM**; division by 100 can be reduced to multiplication by  $1//100+1$  (see exercise 1.3.1'–19); etc.*

[To calculate Easter in years  $\leq 1582$ , see *CACM* **5** (1962), 209–210. The first systematic algorithm for calculating the date of Easter was the *canon paschalis* due to Victorius of Aquitania (A.D. 457). There are many indications that the sole nontrivial application of arithmetic in Europe during the Middle Ages was the calculation of Easter date, hence such algorithms are historically significant. See *Puzzles and Paradoxes* by T. H. O'Beirne (London: Oxford University Press, 1965), Chapter 10, for further commentary; and see the book *Calendrical Calculations* by E. M. Reingold and N. Dershowitz (Cambridge Univ. Press, 2001) for date-oriented algorithms of all kinds.]

**33.** The first such year is A.D. 10317, although the error *almost* leads to failure in A.D.  $10108 + 19k$  for  $0 \leq k \leq 10$ .

Incidentally, T. H. O'Beirne pointed out that the date of Easter repeats with a period of exactly 5,700,000 years. Calculations by Robert Hill show that the most common date is April 19 (220400 times per period), while the earliest and least common is March 22 (27550 times); the latest, and next-to-least common, is April 25 (42000 times). Hill found a nice explanation for the curious fact that the number of times any particular day occurs in the period is always a multiple of 25.

**34.** The following program follows the protocol to within a dozen or so  $v$ ; this is more than sufficiently accurate, since  $\rho$  is typically more than  $10^8$ , and  $\rho v = 1$  sec. All computation takes place in registers, except when a byte is input.

```
* Traffic Signal Problem
rho      GREG  250000000          Assume 250 MHz clock rate
t        IS    $255
Sensor_Buf IS    Data_Segment
          GREG  Sensor_Buf
          LOC   #100
Lights   IS    3                  Handle for /dev/lights
Sensor   IS    4                  Handle for /dev/sensor
Lights_Name BYTE "/dev/lights",0
Sensor_Name BYTE "/dev/sensor",0
Lights_Args OCTA Lights_Name,BinaryWrite
Sensor_Args OCTA Sensor_Name,BinaryRead
Read_Sensor OCTA Sensor_Buf,1
Boulevard BYTE #77,0             Green/red, WALK/DON'T
          BYTE #7f,0             Green/red, DON'T/DON'T
          BYTE #73,0             Green/red, off/DON'T
          BYTE #bf,0             Amber/red, DON'T/DON'T
Avenue   BYTE #dd,0             Red/green, DON'T/WALK
          BYTE #df,0             Red/green, DON'T/DON'T
          BYTE #dc,0             Red/green, DON'T/off
          BYTE #ef,0             Red/amber, DON'T/DON'T
```

|          |      |                     |                                   |
|----------|------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| goal     | GREG | 0                   | Transition time for lights        |
| Main     | GETA | t,Lights_Args       | Open the files: Fopen(Lights,     |
|          | TRAP | 0,Fopen,Lights      | "/dev/lights",BinaryWrite)        |
|          | GETA | t,Sensor_Args       | Fopen(Sensor,                     |
|          | TRAP | 0,Fopen,Sensor      | "/dev/sensor",BinaryRead)         |
|          | GET  | goal,rC             |                                   |
|          | JMP  | 2F                  |                                   |
|          | GREG | @                   |                                   |
| delay_go | GREG |                     |                                   |
| Delay    | GET  | t,rC                | Subroutine for busy-waiting:      |
|          | SUBU | t,t,goal            | (N.B. <i>Not</i> CMPU; see below) |
|          | PBN  | t,Delay             | Repeat until rC passes goal.      |
|          | GO   | delay_go,delay_go,0 | Return to caller.                 |
| flash_go | GREG |                     |                                   |
| n        | GREG | 0                   | Iteration counter                 |
| green    | GREG | 0                   | Boulevard or Avenue               |
| temp     | GREG |                     |                                   |
| Flash    | SET  | n,8                 | Subroutine to flash the lights:   |
| 1H       | ADD  | t,green,2*1         |                                   |
|          | TRAP | 0,Fputs,Lights      | DON'T WALK                        |
|          | ADD  | temp,goal,rho       |                                   |
|          | SR   | t,rho,1             |                                   |
|          | ADDU | goal,goal,t         |                                   |
|          | GO   | delay_go,Delay      |                                   |
|          | ADD  | t,green,2*2         |                                   |
|          | TRAP | 0,Fputs,Lights      | (off)                             |
|          | SET  | goal,temp           |                                   |
|          | GO   | delay_go,Delay      |                                   |
|          | SUB  | n,n,1               |                                   |
|          | PBP  | n,1B                | Repeat eight times.               |
|          | ADD  | t,green,2*1         |                                   |
|          | TRAP | 0,Fputs,Lights      | DON'T WALK                        |
|          | MUL  | t,rho,4             |                                   |
|          | ADDU | goal,goal,t         |                                   |
|          | GO   | delay_go,Delay      | Hold for 4 sec.                   |
|          | ADD  | t,green,2*3         |                                   |
|          | TRAP | 0,Fputs,Lights      | DON'T WALK, amber                 |
|          | GO   | flash_go,flash_go,0 | Return to caller.                 |
| Wait     | GET  | goal,rC             | Extend the 18 sec green.          |
| 1H       | GETA | t,Read_Sensor       |                                   |
|          | TRAP | 0,Fread,Sensor      |                                   |
|          | LDB  | t,Sensor_Buf        |                                   |
|          | BZ   | t,Wait              | Repeat until sensor is nonzero.   |
|          | GETA | green,Boulevard     |                                   |
|          | GO   | flash_go,Flash      | Finish the boulevard cycle.       |
|          | MUL  | t,rho,8             |                                   |
|          | ADDU | goal,goal,t         |                                   |
|          | GO   | delay_go,Delay      | Amber for 8 sec.                  |

|    |      |                |                                  |
|----|------|----------------|----------------------------------|
|    | GETA | t,Avenue       |                                  |
|    | TRAP | 0,Fputs,Lights | Green light for Berkeley.        |
|    | MUL  | t,rho,8        |                                  |
|    | ADDU | goal,goal,t    |                                  |
|    | GO   | delay_go,Delay |                                  |
|    | GETA | green,Avenue   |                                  |
|    | GO   | flash_go,Flash | Finish the avenue cycle.         |
|    | GETA | t,Read_Sensor  |                                  |
|    | TRAP | 0,Fread,Sensor | Ignore sensor during green time. |
|    | MUL  | t,rho,5        |                                  |
|    | ADDU | goal,goal,t    |                                  |
|    | GO   | delay_go,Delay | Amber for 5 sec.                 |
| 2H | GETA | t,Boulevard    |                                  |
|    | TRAP | 0,Fputs,Lights | Green light for Del Mar.         |
|    | MUL  | t,rho,18       |                                  |
|    | ADDU | goal,goal,t    |                                  |
|    | GO   | delay_go,Delay | At least 18 sec to WALK.         |
|    | JMP  | 1B             | ■                                |

The SUBU instruction in the Delay subroutine is an interesting example of a case where the comparison should be done with SUBU, *not* with CMPU, in spite of the comments in exercise 1.3.1'–22. The reason is that the two quantities being compared, rC and goal, “wrap around” modulo  $2^{64}$ .

### SECTION 1.4.1'

```

1. j GREG ;m GREG ;kk GREG ;xk GREG ;rr GREG
    GREG    @      Base address
GoMax SET    $2,1   Special entrance for  $r = 1$ 
GoMaxR SL    rr,$2,3 Multiply arguments by 8.
          SL    kk,$1,3
          LDO   m,x0,kk
          ...    (Continue as in (1))
5H      SUB    kk,kk,rr  $k \leftarrow k - r$ .
          PBP    kk,3B   Repeat if  $k > 0$ .
6H      GO     kk,$0,0   Return to caller. ■

```

The calling sequence for the general case is SET \$2,r; SET \$1,n; GO \$0,GoMaxR.

```

2. j IS $0 ;m IS $1 ;kk IS $2 ;xk IS $3 ;rr IS $4
Max100 SET    $0,100   Special entrance for  $n = 100$  and  $r = 1$ 
Max      SET    $1,1    Special entrance for  $r = 1$ 
MaxR     SL     rr,$1,3  Multiply arguments by 8.
          SL     kk,$0,3
          LDO    m,x0,kk
          ...    (Continue as in (1))
5H      SUB     kk,kk,rr  $k \leftarrow k - r$ .
          PBP     kk,3B   Repeat if  $k > 0$ .
6H      POP     2,0      Return to caller. ■

```

In this case the general calling sequence is SET \$A1,r; SET \$A0,n; PUSHJ \$R,MaxR, where  $A0 = R + 1$  and  $A1 = R + 2$ .

3. Just Sub ...; GO \$0,\$0,0. The local variables can be kept entirely in registers.

4. `PUSHJ $X,RA` has a relative address, allowing us to jump to any subroutine within  $\pm 2^{18}$  bytes of our current location. `PUSHGO $X,$Y,$Z` or `PUSHGO $X,A` has an absolute address, allowing us to jump to any desired place.

5. True. There are  $256 - G$  globals and  $L$  locals.

6.  $\$5 \leftarrow \text{rD}$  and  $\text{rR} \leftarrow 0$  and  $\text{rL} \leftarrow 6$ . All other newly local registers are also set to zero; for example, if  $\text{rL}$  was 3, this `DIVU` instruction would set  $\$3 \leftarrow 0$  and  $\$4 \leftarrow 0$ .

7.  $\$L \leftarrow 0, \dots, \$4 \leftarrow 0, \$5 \leftarrow \#abcd0000, \text{rL} \leftarrow 6$ .

8. Usually such an instruction has no essential impact, except that context switching with `SAVE` and `UNSAVE` generally take longer when fewer marginal registers are present. However, an important difference can arise in certain scenarios. For example, a subsequent `PUSHJ $255,Sub` followed by `POP 1,0` would leave a result in  $\$16$  instead of  $\$10$ .

9. `PUSHJ $255,Handler` will make at least 32 marginal registers available (because  $G \geq 32$ ); then `POP 0` will restore the previous local registers, and two additional instructions “`GET $255,rB; RESUME`” will restart the program as if nothing had happened.

10. Basically true. `MMIX` will start a program with  $\text{rG}$  set to 255 minus the number of assembled `GREG` operations, and with  $\text{rL}$  set to 2. Then, in the absence of `PUSHJ`, `PUSHGO`, `POP`, `SAVE`, `UNSAVE`, `GET`, and `PUT`, the value of  $\text{rG}$  will never change. The value of  $\text{rL}$  will increase if the program puts anything into  $\$2, \$3, \dots$ , or  $\$(\text{rG} - 1)$ , but the effect will be the same as if all registers were equivalent. The only register with slightly different behavior is  $\$255$ , which is affected by trip interrupts and used for communication in I/O traps. We could permute register numbers  $\$2, \$3, \dots, \$254$  arbitrarily in any `PUSH/POP/SAVE/UNSAVE/RESUME`-free program that does not `GET`  $\text{rL}$  or `PUT` anything into  $\text{rL}$  or  $\text{rG}$ ; the permuted program would produce identical results.

The distinction between local, global, and marginal is irrelevant also with respect to `SAVE`, `UNSAVE`, and `RESUME`, in the absence of `PUSH` and `POP`, except that the destination register of `SAVE` must be global and the destination register of certain instructions inserted by `RESUME` mustn't be marginal (see exercise 1.4.3'–14).

11. The machine tries to access virtual address `#5ffffffffffff8`, which is just below the stack segment. Nothing has been stored there, so a “page fault” occurs and the operating system aborts the program.

(The behavior is, however, much more bizarre if a `POP` is given just after a `SAVE`, because `SAVE` essentially begins a new register stack immediately following the saved context. Anybody who tries such things is asking for trouble.)

12. (a) True. (Similarly, the name of the current “working directory” in a UNIX shell always begins with a slash.) (b) False. But confusion can arise if such prefixes are defined, so their use is discouraged. (c) False. (In this respect `MMIXAL`'s structured symbols are *not* analogous to UNIX directory names.)

|         |       |             |      |      |             |      |      |             |
|---------|-------|-------------|------|------|-------------|------|------|-------------|
| 13. Fib | CMP   | \$1,\$0,2   | Fib1 | CMP  | \$1,\$0,2   | Fib2 | CMP  | \$1,\$0,1   |
|         | PBN   | \$1,1F      |      | BN   | \$1,1F      |      | BNP  | \$1,1F      |
|         | GET   | \$1,rJ      |      | SUB  | \$2,\$0,1   |      | SUB  | \$2,\$0,1   |
|         | SUB   | \$3,\$0,1   |      | SET  | \$0,1       |      | SET  | \$0,0       |
|         | PUSHJ | \$2,Fib     |      | SET  | \$1,0       | 2H   | ADDU | \$0,\$0,\$1 |
|         | SUB   | \$4,\$0,2   | 2H   | ADDU | \$0,\$0,\$1 |      | ADDU | \$1,\$0,\$1 |
|         | PUSHJ | \$3,Fib     |      | SUBU | \$1,\$0,\$1 |      | SUB  | \$2,\$2,2   |
|         | ADDU  | \$0,\$2,\$3 |      | SUB  | \$2,\$2,1   |      | PBP  | \$2,2B      |
|         | PUT   | rJ,\$1      |      | PBNZ | \$2,2B      |      | CSZ  | \$0,\$2,\$1 |
| 1H      | POP   | 1,0         | 1H   | POP  | 1,0         | 1H   | POP  | 1,0         |

Here **Fib2** is a faster alternative to **Fib1**. In each case the calling sequence has the form “**SET \$A,n; PUSHJ \$R,Fib...**”, where  $A = R + 1$ .

**14.** Mathematical induction shows that the **POP** instruction in **Fib** is executed exactly  $2F_{n+1} - 1$  times and the **ADDU** instruction is executed  $F_{n+1} - 1$  times. The instruction at **2H** is performed  $n - [n \neq 0]$  times in **Fib1**,  $[n/2]$  times in **Fib2**. Thus the total cost, including the two instructions in the calling sequence, comes to  $(19F_{n+1} - 12)v$  for **Fib**,  $(4n + 8)v$  for **Fib1**, and  $(4[n/2] + 12)v$  for **Fib2**, assuming that  $n > 1$ .

(The recursive subroutine **Fib** is a *terrible* way to compute Fibonacci numbers, because it forgets the values it has already computed. It spends more than  $10^{22}v$  units of time just to compute  $F_{100}$ .)

|            |            |             |                 |              |                  |
|------------|------------|-------------|-----------------|--------------|------------------|
| <b>15.</b> | <b>n</b>   | <b>GREG</b> |                 | <b>GO</b>    | <b>\$0,Fib</b>   |
|            | <b>fn</b>  | <b>IS</b>   | <b>n</b>        | <b>STO</b>   | <b>fn,fp,24</b>  |
|            |            | <b>GREG</b> | <b>@</b>        | <b>LDO</b>   | <b>n,fp,16</b>   |
|            | <b>Fib</b> | <b>CMP</b>  | <b>\$1,n,2</b>  | <b>SUB</b>   | <b>n,n,2</b>     |
|            |            | <b>PBN</b>  | <b>\$1,1F</b>   | <b>GO</b>    | <b>\$0,Fib</b>   |
|            |            | <b>STO</b>  | <b>fp,sp,0</b>  | <b>LDO</b>   | <b>\$0,fp,24</b> |
|            |            | <b>SET</b>  | <b>fp,sp</b>    | <b>ADDU</b>  | <b>fn,fn,\$0</b> |
|            |            | <b>INCL</b> | <b>sp,8*4</b>   | <b>LDO</b>   | <b>\$0,fp,8</b>  |
|            |            | <b>STO</b>  | <b>\$0,fp,8</b> | <b>SET</b>   | <b>sp,fp</b>     |
|            |            | <b>STO</b>  | <b>n,fp,16</b>  | <b>LDO</b>   | <b>fp,sp,0</b>   |
|            |            | <b>SUB</b>  | <b>n,n,1</b>    | <b>1H GO</b> | <b>\$0,\$0,0</b> |

The calling sequence is **SET n,n; GO \$0,Fib**; the answer is returned in global register **fn**. The running time comes to  $(8F_{n+1} - 8)\mu + (32F_{n+1} - 23)v$ , so the ratio between this version and the register stack subroutine of exercise 13 is approximately  $(8\mu/v + 32)/19$ . (Although exercise 14 points out that we shouldn't really calculate Fibonacci numbers recursively, this analysis does demonstrate the advantage of a register stack. Even if we are generous and assume that  $\mu = v$ , the memory stack costs more than twice as much in this example. A similar behavior occurs with respect to other subroutines, but the analysis for **Fib** is particularly simple.)

In the special case of **Fib** we can do without the frame pointer, because **fp** is always a fixed distance from **sp**. A memory-stack subroutine based on this observation runs about  $(6\mu/v + 29)/19$  slower than the register-stack version; it's better than the version with general frames, but still not very good.

**16.** This is an ideal setup for a subroutine with two exits. Let's assume for convenience that **B** and **C** do not return any value, and that they each save **rJ** in **\$1** (because they are not leaf subroutines). Then we can proceed as follows: **A** calls **B** by saying **PUSHJ \$R,B** as usual. **B** calls **C** by saying **PUSHJ \$R,C; PUT rJ,\$1; POP 0,0** (with perhaps a different value of **R** than used by subroutine **A**). **C** calls itself by saying **PUSHJ \$R,C; PUT rJ,\$1; POP 0,0** (with perhaps a different value of **R** than used by **B**). **C** jumps to **A** by saying **PUT rJ,\$1; POP 0,0**. **C** exits normally by saying **PUT rJ,\$1; POP 0,2**.

Extensions of this idea, in which values are returned and an arbitrary jump address can be part of the returned information, are clearly possible. Similar schemes apply to the **GO**-oriented memory stack protocol of (15).

## SECTION 1.4.2'

**1.** If one coroutine calls the other only once, it is nothing but a subroutine; so we need an application in which each coroutine calls the other in at least two distinct places. Even then, it is often easy to set some sort of switch or to use some property



of the data, so that upon entry to a fixed place within one coroutine it is possible to branch to one of two desired places; again, nothing more than a subroutine would be required. Coroutines become correspondingly more useful as the number of references between them grows larger.

2. The first character found by **In** would be lost.

3. This is an **MMIXAL** trick to make **OutBuf** contain fifteen tetrabytes **TETRA ' '**, followed by **TETRA #a**, followed by zero; and **TETRA ' '** is equivalent to **BYTE 0,0,0,' '**. The output buffer is therefore set up to receive a line of 16 three-character groups separated by blank spaces.

4. If we include the code

```
rR_A GREG
rR_B GREG
  GREG @
A GET rR_B,rR
  PUT rR,rR_A
  GO t,a,0
B GET rR_A,rR
  PUT rR,rR_B
  GO t,b,0
```

then **A** can invoke **B** by “**GO a,B**” and **B** can invoke **A** by “**GO b,A**”.

5. If we include the code

```
a GREG
b GREG
  GREG @
A GET b,rJ
  PUT rJ,a
  POP 0
B GET a,rJ
  PUT rJ,b
  POP 0
```

then **A** can invoke **B** by “**PUSHJ \$255,B**” and **B** can invoke **A** by “**PUSHJ \$255,A**”. Notice the similarity between this answer and the previous one. The coroutines should not use the register stack for other purposes except as permitted by the following exercise.

6. Suppose coroutine **A** has something in the register stack when invoking **B**. Then **B** is obliged to return the stack to the same state before returning to **A**, although **B** might push and pop any number of items in the meantime.

Coroutines might, of course, be sufficiently complicated that they each do require a register stack of their own. In such cases **MMIX**’s **SAVE** and **UNSAVE** operations can be used, with care, to save and restore the context needed by each coroutine.

### SECTION 1.4.3'

1. (a) **SRU x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#29**. (b) **PBP x,PBTaken+@-0; BYTE 0,3,0,#50**.  
(c) **MUX x,y,z; BYTE 0,1,rM,#29**. (d) **ADDU x,x,z; BYTE 0,1,0,#30**.

2. The running time of **MemFind** is  $9v + (2\mu + 8v)C + (3\mu + 6v)U + (2\mu + 11v)A$ , where  $C$  is the number of key comparisons on line 042,  $U = [\text{key} \neq \text{curkey}]$ , and  $A = [\text{new node needed}]$ . The running time of **GetReg** is  $\mu + 6v + 6vL$ , where  $L = [\$k \text{ is local}]$ .

If we assume that  $C = U = A = L = 0$  on each call, the time for simulation can be broken down as follows:

|                                | (a)           | (b)           | (c)                  |
|--------------------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------------|
| fetching (lines 105–115)       | $\mu + 17v$   | $\mu + 17v$   | $\mu + 17v$          |
| unpacking (lines 141–153)      | $\mu + 12v$   | $\mu + 12v$   | $\mu + 12v$          |
| relating (lines 154–164)       | $2v$          | $2v$          | $9v$                 |
| installing X (lines 174–182)   | $7v$          | $\mu + 17v$   | $\mu + 17v$          |
| installing Z (lines 183–197)   | $\mu + 13v$   | $6v$          | $6v$                 |
| installing Y (lines 198–207)   | $\mu + 13v$   | $\mu + 13v$   | $6v$                 |
| destining (lines 208–231)      | $8v$          | $23v$         | $6v$                 |
| resuming (lines 232–242)       | $14v$         | $\mu + 14v$   | $16v - \pi$          |
| postprocessing (lines 243–539) | $\mu + 10v$   | $11v$         | $11v - 4\pi$         |
| updating (lines 540–548)       | $5v$          | $5v$          | $5v$                 |
| total                          | $5\mu + 101v$ | $5\mu + 120v$ | $3\mu + 105v - 5\pi$ |

To these times we must add  $6v$  for each occurrence of a local register as a source, plus penalties for the times when **MemFind** doesn't immediately have the correct chunk. In case (b), **MemFind** *must* miss on line 231, and again on line 111 when fetching the following instruction. (We would be better off with *two* **MemFind** routines, one for data and one for instructions.) The most optimistic net cost of (b) is therefore obtained by taking  $C = A = 2$ , for a total running time of  $13\mu + 158v$ . (On long runs of the simulator simulating itself, the empirical average values per call of **MemFind** were  $C \approx .29$ ,  $U \approx .00001$ ,  $A \approx .16$ .)

3. We have  $\beta = \gamma$  and  $L > 0$  on line 097. Thus  $\alpha = \gamma$  *can* arise, but only in extreme circumstances when  $L = 256$  (see line 268 and exercise 11). Luckily  $L$  will soon become 0 in that case.

4. No problem can occur until a node invades the pool segment, which begins at address #4000000000000000; then remnants of the command line might interfere with the program's assumption that a newly allocated node is initially zero. But the data segment is able to accommodate  $\lfloor (2^{61} - 2^{12} - 2^4) / (2^{12} + 24) \rfloor = 559,670,633,304,293$  nodes, so we will not live long enough to experience any problem from this "bug."

5. Line 218 calls **StackRoom** calls **StackStore** calls **MemFind**; this is as deep as it gets. Line 218 has pushed 3 registers down; **StackRoom** has pushed only 2 (since  $rL = 1$  on line 097); **StackStore** has pushed 3. The value of  $rL$  on line 032 is 2 (although  $rL$  increases to 5 on line 034). Hence the register stack contains  $3 + 2 + 3 + 2 = 10$  unpopped items in the worst case.

The program halts shortly after branching to **Error**; and even if it were to continue, the extra garbage at the bottom of the stack won't hurt anything—we could simply ignore it. However, we could clear the stack by providing second exits as in exercise 1.4.1'–16. A simpler way to flush an entire stack is to pop repeatedly until  $rO$  equals its initial value, **Stack\_Segment**.

```

6. 247 Div   DIV   x,y,z   Divide y by z, signed.
    248      JMP   1F
    249 DivU  PUT   rD,x     Put simulated rD into real rD.
    250      DIVU  x,y,z     Divide y by z, unsigned.
    251 1H    GET   t,rR
    252      STO   t,g,8*rR  g[rR] ← remainder.
    253      JMP   XDone    Finish by storing x. ■

```

7. (The following instructions should be inserted between line 309 of the text and the Info table, together with the answers to the next several exercises.)

```

Cswap  LDOU    z,g,8*rP
        LDOU    y,res,0
        CMPU    t,y,z
        BNZ     t,1F      Branch if  $M_8[A] \neq g[rP]$ .
        STOU    x,res,0   Otherwise set  $M_8[A] \leftarrow \$X$ .
        JMP     2F
1H      STOU    y,g,8*rP   Set  $g[rP] \leftarrow M_8[A]$ .
2H      ZSZ     x,t,1       $x \leftarrow$  result of equality test.
        JMP     XDone     Finish by storing x. ■

```

8. Here we store the simulated registers that we're keeping in actual registers. (This approach is better than a 32-way branch to see which register is being gotten; it's also better than the alternative of storing the registers every time we change them.)

```

Get  CMPU    t,yz,32
     BNN     t>Error     Make sure that  $YZ < 32$ .
     STOU    ii,g,8*rI   Put the correct value into  $g[rI]$ .
     STOU    cc,g,8*rC   Put the correct value into  $g[rC]$ .
     STOU    oo,g,8*rO   Put the correct value into  $g[rO]$ .
     STOU    ss,g,8*rS   Put the correct value into  $g[rS]$ .
     STOU    uu,g,8*rU   Put the correct value into  $g[rU]$ .
     STOU    aa,g,8*rA   Put the correct value into  $g[rA]$ .
     SR      t,ll,3
     STOU    t,g,8*rL   Put the correct value into  $g[rL]$ .
     SR      t,gg,3
     STOU    t,g,8*rG   Put the correct value into  $g[rG]$ .
     SLU     t,zz,3
     LDOU    x,g,t       Set  $x \leftarrow g[Z]$ .
     JMP     XDone     Finish by storing x. ■

9. Put  BNZ     yy>Error  Make sure that  $Y = 0$ .
        CMPU    t,xx,32
        BNN     t>Error  Make sure that  $X < 32$ .
        CMPU    t,xx,rC
        BN      t,PutOK   Branch if  $X < 8$ .
        CMPU    t,xx,rF
        BN      t,1F      Branch if  $X < 22$ .
PutOK  STOU    z,g,xxx    Set  $g[X] \leftarrow z$ .
        JMP     Update    Finish the command.
1H     CMPU    t,xx,rG
        BN      t>Error   Branch if  $X < 19$ .
        SUB     t,xx,rL
        PBP     t,PutA     Branch if  $X = rA$ .
        BN      t,PutG     Branch if  $X = rG$ .
PutL   SLU     z,z,3       Otherwise  $X = rL$ .
        CMPU    t,z,ll
        CSN     ll,t,z     Set  $rL \leftarrow \min(z, rL)$ .
        JMP     Update    Finish the command.
OH GREG #40000

```

|      |      |         |                                                |
|------|------|---------|------------------------------------------------|
| PutA | CMPU | t,z,0B  |                                                |
|      | BNN  | t,Error | Make sure $z \leq \#3ffff$ .                   |
|      | SET  | aa,z    | Set $rA \leftarrow z$ .                        |
|      | JMP  | Update  | Finish the command.                            |
| PutG | SRU  | t,z,8   |                                                |
|      | BNZ  | t,Error | Make sure $z < 256$ .                          |
|      | CMPU | t,z,32  |                                                |
|      | BN   | t,Error | Make sure $z \geq 32$ .                        |
|      | SLU  | z,z,3   |                                                |
|      | CMPU | t,z,11  |                                                |
|      | BN   | t,Error | Make sure $z \geq rL$ .                        |
|      | JMP  | 2F      |                                                |
| 1H   | SUBU | gg,gg,8 | $G \leftarrow G - 1$ . (\$G becomes global.)   |
|      | STCO | 0,g,gg  | $g[G] \leftarrow 0$ . (Compare with line 216.) |
| 2H   | CMPU | t,z,gg  |                                                |
|      | PBN  | t,1B    | Branch if $G < z$ .                            |
|      | SET  | gg,z    | Set $rG \leftarrow z$ .                        |
|      | JMP  | Update  | Finish the command. ■                          |

In this case the nine commands that branch to either PutOK, PutA, PutG, PutL, or Error are tedious, yet still preferable to a 32-way switching table.

|         |       |                 |                                                           |
|---------|-------|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| 10. Pop | SUBU  | oo,oo,8         |                                                           |
|         | BZ    | xx,1F           | Branch if $X = 0$ .                                       |
|         | CMPU  | t,11,xxx        |                                                           |
|         | BN    | t,1F            | Branch if $X > L$ .                                       |
|         | ADDU  | t,xxx,oo        |                                                           |
|         | AND   | t,t,lring_mask  |                                                           |
|         | LDOU  | y,1,t           | $y \leftarrow$ result to return.                          |
| 1H      | CMPU  | t,oo,ss         |                                                           |
|         | PBNN  | t,1F            | Branch unless $\alpha = \gamma$ .                         |
|         | PUSHJ | 0,StackLoad     |                                                           |
| 1H      | AND   | t,oo,lring_mask |                                                           |
|         | LDOU  | z,1,t           | $z \leftarrow$ number of additional registers to pop.     |
|         | AND   | z,z,#ff         | Make sure $z \leq 255$ (in case of weird error).          |
|         | SLU   | z,z,3           |                                                           |
| 1H      | SUBU  | t,oo,ss         |                                                           |
|         | CMPU  | t,t,z           |                                                           |
|         | PBNN  | t,1F            | Branch unless $z$ registers not all in the ring.          |
|         | PUSHJ | 0,StackLoad     | (See note below.)                                         |
|         | JMP   | 1B              | Repeat until all necessary registers are loaded.          |
| 1H      | ADDU  | 11,11,8         |                                                           |
|         | CMPU  | t,xxx,11        |                                                           |
|         | CSN   | 11,t,xxx        | Set $L \leftarrow \min(X, L + 1)$ .                       |
|         | ADDU  | 11,11,z         | Then increase $L$ by $z$ .                                |
|         | CMPU  | t,gg,11         |                                                           |
|         | CSN   | 11,t,gg         | Set $L \leftarrow \min(L, G)$ .                           |
|         | CMPU  | t,z,11          |                                                           |
|         | BNN   | t,1F            | Branch if returned result should be discarded.            |
|         | AND   | t,oo,lring_mask |                                                           |
|         | STOU  | y,1,t           | Otherwise set $l[(\alpha - 1) \bmod \rho] \leftarrow y$ . |

```

1H  LDOU    y,g,8*rJ
     SUBU    oo,oo,z          Decrease  $\alpha$  by  $1 + z$ .
     4ADDU   inst_ptr,yz,y    Set  $inst\_ptr \leftarrow g[rJ] + 4YZ$ .
     JMP     Update          Finish the command. ■

```

Here it is convenient to decrease `oo` in two steps, first by 8 and then by 8 times `z`. The program is complicated in general, but in most cases comparatively little computation actually needs to be done. If  $\beta = \gamma$  when the second `StackLoad` call is given, we implicitly decrease  $\beta$  by 1 (thereby discarding the topmost item of the register stack). That item will not be needed unless it is the value being returned, but the latter value has already been placed in `y`.

```

11. Save  BNZ    yz,Error      Make sure  $YZ = 0$ .
          CMPU    t,xxx,gg
          BN      t,Error      Make sure  $\$X$  is global.
          ADDU    t,oo,11
          AND     t,t,1ring_mask
          SRU     y,11,3
          STOU    y,1,t        Set  $\$L \leftarrow L$ , considering  $\$L$  to be local.
          INCL    11,8
          PUSHJ   0,StackRoom  Make sure  $\beta \neq \gamma$ .
          ADDU    oo,oo,11
          SET     11,0         Push down all local registers and set  $rL \leftarrow 0$ .
1H        PUSHJ   0,StackStore
          CMPU    t,ss,oo
          PBNZ    t,1B         Store all pushed down registers in memory.
          SUBU    y,gg,8        Set  $k \leftarrow G - 1$ . (Here  $y \equiv 8k$ .)
4H        ADDU    y,y,8        Increase  $k$  by 1.
1H        SET     arg,ss
          PUSHJ   res,MemFind
          CMPU    t,y,8*(rZ+1)
          LDOU    z,g,y        Set  $z \leftarrow g[k]$ .
          PBNZ    t,2F
          SLU     z,gg,56-3
          ADDU    z,z,aa        If  $k = rZ + 1$ , set  $z \leftarrow 2^{56}rG + rA$ .
2H        STOU    z,res,0      Store  $z$  in  $M_8[rS]$ .
          INCL    ss,8         Increase  $rS$  by 8.
          BNZ     t,1F         Branch if we just stored  $rG$  and  $rA$ .
          CMPU    t,y,c255
          BZ      t,2F         Branch if we just stored  $\$255$ .
          CMPU    t,y,8*rR
          PBNZ    t,4B         Branch unless we just stored  $rR$ .
          SET     y,8*rP        Set  $k \leftarrow rP$ .
          JMP     1B
2H        SET     y,8*rB        Set  $k \leftarrow rB$ .
          JMP     1B
1H        SET     oo,ss         $rO \leftarrow rS$ .
          SUBU    x,oo,8         $x \leftarrow rO - 8$ .
          JMP     XDone        Finish by storing  $x$ . ■

```

(The special registers saved are those with codes 0–6 and 23–27, plus  $(rG, rA)$ .)

|            |       |                 |                                                  |
|------------|-------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 12. Unsave | BNZ   | xx,Error        | Make sure $X = 0$ .                              |
|            | BNZ   | yy,Error        | Make sure $Y = 0$ .                              |
|            | ANDNL | z,#7            | Make sure $z$ is a multiple of 8.                |
|            | ADDU  | ss,z,8          | Set $rS \leftarrow z + 8$ .                      |
|            | SET   | y,8*(rZ+2)      | Set $k \leftarrow rZ + 2$ . ( $y \equiv 8k$ )    |
| 1H         | SUBU  | y,y,8           | Decrease $k$ by 1.                               |
| 4H         | SUBU  | ss,ss,8         | Decrease $rS$ by 8.                              |
|            | SET   | arg,ss          |                                                  |
|            | PUSHJ | res,MemFind     |                                                  |
|            | LDOU  | x,res,0         | Set $x \leftarrow M_8[rS]$ .                     |
|            | CMPU  | t,y,8*(rZ+1)    |                                                  |
|            | PBNZ  | t,2F            |                                                  |
|            | SRU   | gg,x,56-3       | If $k = rZ + 1$ , initialize $rG$ and $rA$ .     |
|            | SLU   | aa,x,64-18      |                                                  |
|            | SRU   | aa,aa,64-18     |                                                  |
|            | JMP   | 1B              |                                                  |
| 2H         | STOU  | x,g,y           | Otherwise set $g[k] \leftarrow x$ .              |
| 3H         | CMPU  | t,y,8*rP        |                                                  |
|            | CSZ   | y,t,8*(rR+1)    | If $k = rP$ , set $k \leftarrow rR + 1$ .        |
|            | CSZ   | y,y,c256        | If $k = rB$ , set $k \leftarrow 256$ .           |
|            | CMPU  | t,y,gg          |                                                  |
|            | PBNZ  | t,1B            | Repeat the loop unless $k = G$ .                 |
|            | PUSHJ | 0,StackLoad     |                                                  |
|            | AND   | t,ss,lring_mask |                                                  |
|            | LDOU  | x,l,t           | $x \leftarrow$ the number of local registers.    |
|            | AND   | x,x,#ff         | Make sure $x \leq 255$ (in case of weird error). |
|            | BZ    | x,1F            |                                                  |
|            | SET   | y,x             | Now load $x$ local registers into the ring.      |
| 2H         | PUSHJ | 0,StackLoad     |                                                  |
|            | SUBU  | y,y,1           |                                                  |
|            | PBNZ  | y,2B            |                                                  |
|            | SLU   | x,x,3           |                                                  |
| 1H         | SET   | ll,x            |                                                  |
|            | CMPU  | t,gg,x          |                                                  |
|            | CSN   | ll,t,gg         | Set $rL \leftarrow \min(x, rG)$ .                |
|            | SET   | oo,ss           | Set $rO \leftarrow rS$ .                         |
|            | PBNZ  | uu,Update       | Branch, if not the first time.                   |
|            | BZ    | resuming,Update | Branch, if first command is UNSAVE.              |
|            | JMP   | AllDone         | Otherwise clear <b>resuming</b> and finish. ■    |

*A straightforward answer  
is as good as a kiss of friendship.*

— Proverbs 24 : 26

|     |        |               |                 |                                                 |
|-----|--------|---------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 13. | 517    | SET           | xx,0            |                                                 |
|     | 518    | SLU           | t,t,55          | Loop to find highest trip bit.                  |
|     | 519    | 2H INCL       | xx,1            |                                                 |
|     | 520    | SLU           | t,t,1           |                                                 |
|     | 521    | PBNN          | t,2B            |                                                 |
|     | 522    | SET           | t,#100          | Now xx = index of trip bit.                     |
|     | 523    | SRU           | t,t,xx          | t ← corresponding event bit.                    |
|     | 524    | ANDN          | exc,exc,t       | Remove t from exc.                              |
|     | 525    | TakeTrip STOU | inst_ptr,g,8*rW | g[rW] ← inst_ptr.                               |
|     | 526    | SLU           | inst_ptr,xx,4   | inst_ptr ← xx << 4.                             |
|     | 527    | INCH          | inst,#8000      |                                                 |
|     | 528    | STOU          | inst,g,8*rX     | g[rX] ← inst + 2 <sup>63</sup> .                |
|     | 529    | AND           | t,f,Mem_bit     |                                                 |
|     | 530    | PBZ           | t,1F            | Branch if op doesn't access memory.             |
|     | 531    | ADDU          | y,y,z           | Otherwise set y ← (y + z) mod 2 <sup>64</sup> , |
|     | 532    | SET           | z,x             | z ← x.                                          |
|     | 533    | 1H STOU       | y,g,8*rY        | g[rY] ← y.                                      |
|     | 534    | STOU          | z,g,8*rZ        | g[rZ] ← z.                                      |
|     | 535    | LDOU          | t,g,c255        |                                                 |
|     | 536    | STOU          | t,g,8*rB        | g[rB] ← g[255].                                 |
|     | 537    | LDOU          | t,g,8*rJ        |                                                 |
|     | 538    | STOU          | t,g,c255        | g[255] ← g[rJ]. ■                               |
| 14. | Resume | SLU           | t,inst,40       |                                                 |
|     |        | BNZ           | t,Error         | Make sure XYZ = 0.                              |
|     |        | LDOU          | inst_ptr,g,8*rW | inst_ptr ← g[rW].                               |
|     |        | LDOU          | x,g,8*rX        |                                                 |
|     |        | BN            | x,Update        | Finish the command if rX is negative.           |
|     |        | SRU           | xx,x,56         | Otherwise let xx be the ropcode.                |
|     |        | SUBU          | t,xx,2          |                                                 |
|     |        | BNN           | t,1F            | Branch if the ropcode is ≥ 2.                   |
|     |        | PBZ           | xx,2F           | Branch if the ropcode is 0.                     |
|     |        | SRU           | y,x,28          | Otherwise the ropcode is 1:                     |
|     |        | AND           | y,y,#f          | y ← k, the leading nybble of the opcode.        |
|     |        | SET           | z,1             |                                                 |
|     |        | SLU           | z,z,y           | z ← 2 <sup>k</sup> .                            |
|     |        | ANDNL         | z,#70cf         | Zero out the acceptable values of z.            |
|     |        | BNZ           | z,Error         | Make sure the opcode is "normal."               |
|     | 1H     | BP            | t,Error         | Make sure the ropcode is ≤ 2.                   |
|     |        | SRU           | t,x,13          |                                                 |
|     |        | AND           | t,t,c255        |                                                 |
|     |        | CMPU          | y,t,11          |                                                 |
|     |        | BN            | y,2F            | Branch if \$X is local.                         |
|     |        | CMPU          | y,t,gg          |                                                 |
|     |        | BN            | y,Error         | Otherwise make sure \$X is global.              |
|     | 2H     | MOR           | t,x,#8          |                                                 |
|     |        | CMPU          | t,t,#F9         | Make sure the opcode isn't RESUME.              |
|     |        | BZ            | t,Error         |                                                 |
|     |        | NEG           | resuming,xx     |                                                 |

```

          CSNN    resuming,resuming,1    Set resuming as specified.
          JMP     Update                  Finish the command. █
166  LDOU    y,g,8*rY                    y ← g[rY].
167  LDOU    z,g,8*rZ                    z ← g[rZ].
168  BOD     resuming,Install_Y          Branch if ropcode was 1.
169  OH GREG #C1<<56+(x-$0)<<48+(z-$0)<<40+1<<16+X_is_dest_bit
170  SET     f,0B                        Otherwise change f to an ORI instruction.
171  LDOU    exc,g,8*rX
172  MOR     exc,exc,#20                  exc ← third-from-left byte of rX.
173  JMP     XDest                        Continue as for ORI. █

```

15. We need to deal with the fact that the string to be output might be split across two or more chunks of the simulated memory. One solution is to output eight bytes at a time with `Fwrite` until reaching the last octabyte of the string; but that approach is complicated by the fact that the string might start in the middle of an octabyte. Alternatively, we could simply `Fwrite` only one byte at a time; but that would be almost obscenely slow. The following method is much better:

```

SimFputs  SET     xx,0                    (xx will be the number of bytes written)
          SET     z,t                    Set z ← virtual address of string.
1H        SET     arg,z
          PUSHJ   res,MemFind
          SET     t,res                  Set t ← actual address of string.
          GO      $0,DoInst              (See below.)
          BN      t,TrapDone             If error occurred, pass the error to user.
          BZ      t,1F                   Branch if the string was empty.
          ADD     xx,xx,t                Otherwise accumulate the number of bytes.
          ADDU    z,z,t                  Find the address following the string output.
          AND     t,z,Mem:mask
          BZ      t,1B                   Continue if string ended at chunk boundary.
1H        SET     t,xx                  t ← number of bytes successfully put.
          JMP     TrapDone               Finish the operation. █

```

Here `DoInst` is a little subroutine that inserts `inst` into the instruction stream. We provide it with additional entrances that will be useful in the next answers:

```

          GREG    @                      Base address
:SimInst   LDA     t,IOArgs              DoInst to IOArgs and return.
          JMP     DoInst
SimFinish  LDA     t,IOArgs              DoInst to IOArgs and finish.
SimFclose  GETA    $0,TrapDone           DoInst and finish.
:DoInst    PUT     rW,$0                 Put return address into rW.
          PUT     rX,inst                Put inst into rX.
          RESUME  0                      And do it. █

```

16. Again we need to worry about chunk boundaries (see the previous answer), but a byte-at-a-time method is tolerable since file names tend to be fairly short.

```

SimFopen  PUSHJ   0,GetArgs              (See below.)
          ADDU    xx,Mem:alloc,Mem:nodesize
          STOU    xx,IOArgs
          SET     x,xx                    (We'll copy the file name into this open space.)
1H        SET     arg,z
          PUSHJ   res,MemFind

```



```

          LDBU    t,res,0
          STBU    t,x,0      Copy byte M[z].
          INCL    x,1
          INCL    z,1
          PBNZ    t,1B      Repeat until the string has ended.
          GO      $0,SimInst Now open the file.
3H        STCO    0,x,0      Now zero out the copied string.
          CMPU    z,xx,x
          SUB     x,x,8
          PBN     z,3B      Repeat until it is surely obliterated.
          JMP     TrapDone   Pass the result t to the user. █

```

Here `GetArgs` is a subroutine that will be useful also in the implementation of other I/O commands. It sets up `IOArgs` and computes several other useful results in global registers.

```

:GetArgs  GET     $0,rJ      Save the return address.
          SET     y,t        y ← g[255].
          SET     arg,t
          PUSHJ   res,MemFind
          LDOU    z,res,0    z ← virtual address of first argument.
          SET     arg,z
          PUSHJ   res,MemFind
          SET     x,res      x ← internal address of first argument.
          STO     x,IOArgs
          SET     xx,Mem:Chunk
          AND     zz,x,Mem:mask
          SUB     xx,xx,zz    xx ← bytes from x to chunk end.
          ADDU    arg,y,8
          PUSHJ   res,MemFind
          LDOU    zz,res,0    zz ← second argument.
          STOU    zz,IOArgs+8 Convert IOArgs to internal form.
          PUT     rJ,$0      Restore the return address.
          POP     0          █

```

17. This solution, which uses the subroutines above, works also for `SimFwrite(!)`.

```

SimFread  PUSHJ   0,GetArgs  Massage the input arguments.
          SET     y,zz        y ← number of bytes to read.
1H        CMP     t,xx,y
          PBNN    t,SimFinish Branch if we can stay in one chunk.
          STO     xx,IOArgs+8 Oops, we have to work piecewise.
          SUB     y,y,xx
          GO      $0,SimInst
          BN      t,1F        Branch if an error occurs.
          ADD     z,z,xx
          SET     arg,z
          PUSHJ   res,MemFind
          STOU    res,IOArgs  Reduce to the previous problem.
          STO     y,IOArgs+8
          ADD     xx,Mem:mask,1
          JMP     1B

```

```

1H      SUB    t,t,y      Compute the correct number of missing bytes.
        JMP    TrapDone
SimFwrite IS SimFread ;SimFseek IS SimFclose ;SimFtell IS SimFclose █

```

(The program assumes that no file-reading error will occur if the first `Fread` was successful.) Analogous routines for `SimFgets`, `SimFgetws`, and `SimFputws` can be found in the file `sim.mms`, which is one of many demonstration files included with the author's MMIXware programs.

**18.** The stated algorithms will work with any MMIX program for which the number of local registers,  $L$ , never exceeds  $\rho - 1$ , where  $\rho$  is the `lring_size`.

**19.** In all three cases the preceding instruction is `INCL 11,8`, and a value is stored in location  $1 + ((\text{oo} + 11) \wedge \text{lring\_mask})$ . So we could shorten the program slightly.

```

20. 560 1H  GETA  t,OctaArgs
      561      TRAP 0,Fread,Infile  Input  $\lambda$  into  $g[255]$ .
      562      BN   t,9F           Branch if end of file.
      563      LDOU loc,g,c255      $\text{loc} \leftarrow \lambda$ .
      564 2H  GETA  t,OctaArgs
      565      TRAP 0,Fread,Infile  Input an octabyte  $x$  into  $g[255]$ .
      566      LDOU x,g,c255
      567      BN   t>Error        Branch on unexpected end of file.
      568      SET  arg,loc
      569      BZ   x,1B           Start a new sequence if  $x = 0$ .
      570      PUSHJ res,MemFind
      571      STOU x,res,0         Otherwise store  $x$  in  $M_8[\text{loc}]$ .
      572      INCL loc,8          Increase  $\text{loc}$  by 8.
      573      JMP  2B             Repeat until encountering a zero.
      574 9H  TRAP 0,Fclose,Infile Close the input file.
      575      SUBU loc,loc,8      Decrease  $\text{loc}$  by 8. █

```

Also put "`OctaArgs OCTA Global+8*255,8`" in some convenient place.

**21.** Yes it is, up to a point; but the question is interesting and nontrivial.

To analyze it quantitatively, let `sim.mms` be the simulator in MMIXAL, and let `sim.mmo` be the corresponding object file produced by the assembler. Let `Hello.mmo` be the object file corresponding to Program 1.3.2'H. Then the command line '`Hello`' presented to MMIX's operating system will output '`Hello, world`' and stop after  $\mu + 17v$ , not counting the time taken by the operating system to load it and to take care of input/output operations.

Let `Hello0.mmb` be the binary file that corresponds to the command line '`Hello`', in the format of exercise 20. (This file is 176 bytes long.) Then the command line '`sim Hello0.mmb`' will output '`Hello, world`' and stop after  $168\mu + 1699v$ .

Let `Hello1.mmb` be the binary file that corresponds to the command line '`sim Hello0.mmb`'. (This file is 5768 bytes long.) Then the command line '`sim Hello1.mmb`' will output '`Hello, world`' and stop after  $10549\mu + 169505v$ .

Let `Hello2.mmb` be the binary file that corresponds to the command line '`sim Hello1.mmb`'. (This file also turns out to be 5768 bytes long.) Then the command line '`sim Hello2.mmb`' will output '`Hello, world`' and stop after  $789739\mu + 15117686v$ .

Let `Hello3.mmb` be the binary file that corresponds to the command line '`sim Hello2.mmb`'. (Again, 5768 bytes.) Then the command line '`sim Hello3.mmb`' will output '`Hello, world`' if we wait sufficiently long.

Now let `recurse.mmb` be the binary file that corresponds to the command line `'sim recurse.mmb'`. Then the command line `'sim recurse.mmb'` runs the simulator simulating itself simulating itself simulating itself  $\dots$  ad infinitum. The file handle `Infile` is first opened at time  $3\mu + 13v$ , when `recurse.mmb` begins to be read by the simulator at level 1. That handle is closed at time  $1464\mu + 16438v$  when loading is complete; but the simulated simulator at level 2 opens it at time  $1800\mu + 19689v$ , and begins to load `recurse.mmb` into simulated simulated memory. The handle is closed again at time  $99650\mu + 1484347v$ , then reopened by the simulated simulated simulator at time  $116999\mu + 1794455v$ . The third level finishes loading at time  $6827574\mu + 131658624v$  and the fourth level starts at time  $8216888\mu + 159327275v$ .

But the recursion cannot go on forever; indeed, the simulator running itself is a finite-state system, and a finite-state system cannot produce **Fopen-Fclose** events at exponentially longer and longer intervals. Eventually the memory will fill up (see exercise 4) and the simulation will go awry. When will this happen? The exact answer is not easy to determine, but we can estimate it as follows: If the  $k$ th level simulator needs  $n_k$  chunks of memory to load the  $(k+1)$ st level simulator, the value of  $n_{k+1}$  is at most  $4 + \lceil (2^{12} + 16 + (2^{12} + 24)n_k)/2^{12} \rceil$ , with  $n_0 = 0$ . We have  $n_k = 6k$  for  $k < 30$ , but this sequence eventually grows exponentially; it first surpasses  $2^{61}$  when  $k = 6066$ . Thus we can simulate at least  $100^{6065}$  instructions before any problem arises, if we assume that each level of simulation introduces a factor of at least 100 (see exercise 2).

**22.** The pairs  $(x_k, y_k)$  can be stored in memory following the trace program itself, which should appear after all other instructions in the text segment of the program being traced. (The operating system will give the trace routine permission to modify the text segment.) The main idea is to scan ahead from the current location in the traced program to the next branch or **GO** or **PUSH** or **POP** or **JMP** or **RESUME** or **TRIP** instruction, then to replace that instruction temporarily in memory with a **TRIP** command. The tetrabytes in locations  $\#0$ ,  $\#10$ ,  $\#20$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $\#80$  of the traced program are changed so that they jump to appropriate locations within the trace routine; then all control transfers will be traced, including transfers due to arithmetic interrupts. The original instructions in those locations can be traced via **RESUME**, as long as they are not themselves **RESUME** commands.

## INDEX AND GLOSSARY

When an index entry refers to a page containing a relevant exercise, see also the *answer* to that exercise for further information. An answer page is not indexed here unless it refers to a topic not included in the statement of the exercise.

- : (colon), 61–62, 65, 80.
- " (double-quote), 31, 37, 44, 72, 100.
- \_ (underscore), 37.
- @ (at sign), 15, 35, 38, 81.
- \$0, 31, 58.
- \$1, 31, 58.
- 2ADDU (times 2 and add unsigned), 9.
- 4ADDU (times 4 and add unsigned), 9.
- 8ADDU (times 8 and add unsigned), 9.
- 16ADDU (times 16 and add unsigned), 9.
- \$255, 34, 40–43, 56, 68, 114.
- $\mu$  (average memory access time), 22.
- $\phi$  (golden ratio), 8, 47.
- $v$  (instruction cycle time), 22.
- Absolute address, 15.
- Absolute difference, 26.
- Absolute value, 26, 27.
- ACE computer, 65.
- ADD, 8.
- Addition, 8, 12, 14, 25.
- Addition chains, 98.
- ADDU (add unsigned), 8.
- Adobe Systems, 74.
- Ahrens, Wilhelm Ernst Martin Georg, 48.
- ALGOL language, 74.
- Algol W language, iv.
- Alhazen, *see* Ibn al-Haytham.
- Aliasing, 108.
- Alignment, 39, 44.
- Alpha 21164 computer, 2.
- AMD 29000 computer, 2.
- AND (bitwise and), 10.
- ANDN (bitwise and-not), 10.
- ANDNH (bitwise and-not high wyde), 14.
- ANDNL (bitwise and-not low wyde), 14.
- ANDNMH (bitwise and-not medium high wyde), 14.
- ANDNML (bitwise and-not medium low wyde), 14.
- ANSI: The American National Standards Institute, 12.
- Arabic numerals, 44.
- Arabic script, 44, 100.
- Arguments, 54.
- Arithmetic exceptions, 18, 89.
- Arithmetic operators of MMIX, 8–9.
- Arithmetic overflow, 6, 7, 18, 25, 27, 65, 84, 95, 109.
- Arithmetic status register, 18.
- ASCII: American Standard Code for Information Interchange, iv, 3, 26, 32, 34, 37, 44, 67.
- Assembly language for MMIX, 28–44.
- Assembly program, 29, 30, 40.
- Associative law:  $(a \circ b) \circ c = a \circ (b \circ c)$ , 11.
- At sign (@), 15, 35, 38, 81.
- Atomic instruction, 17.
- $b(x)$ , 11.
- Ball, Walter William Rouse, 48.
- Base address, 35, 39.
- BDIF (byte difference), 11, 26, 101.
- Bertrand, Joseph Louis François, postulate, 100.
- BEV (branch if even), 15.
- Bidirectional typesetting, 44.
- Bienstock, Daniel, 104.
- Big-endian convention: Most significant byte first, 4–7, 116.
- Binary file, 41.
- for programs, 90, 92–93, 125.
- Binary number system, 4.
- Binary operators in MMIXAL, 38.
- Binary radix point, 8, 24.
- Binary-to-decimal conversion, 37.
- BinaryRead mode, 43.
- BinaryReadWrite mode, 43.
- BinaryWrite mode, 43.
- Bit: “Binary digit”, either zero or unity, 2.
- Bit difference, 26.
- Bit reversal, 26, 97.
- Bit vectors, 10.
- Bitwise difference, 14.
- Bitwise operators of MMIX, 10, 14, 25.
- Blank space, 26, 40, 67.
- BN (branch if negative), 15.
- BNN (branch if nonnegative), 15.
- BNP (branch if nonpositive), 15.
- BNZ (branch if nonzero), 15.
- BOD (branch if odd), 15.
- Boolean matrix, 11, 96.
- Bootstrap register, 18.
- Bourne, Charles Percy, 107.
- BP (branch if positive), 15.
- Branch operators of MMIX, 15, 85.
- BSPEC (begin special data), 62.
- Buchholz, Werner, 94.
- Byte: An 8-bit quantity, 3, 24, 94.
- Byte difference, 11, 26.
- BYTE operator, 31, 39.
- Byte reversal, 12.
- BZ (branch if zero), 15.

- C language, iv, 45.
- C++ language, iv.
- Cache memory, 17, 22–23, 72, 98, 105, 107.
- Calendar, 49.
- Calling sequence, 54–56, 60, 68–70.
- Carry, 25.
- Cauchy, Augustin Louis, 105.
- Ceiling, 13.
- Character constant, 37.
- Chess, 66.
- Chung, Fan Rong King (鍾金芳蓉), 104.
- Chunks, 77, 123.
- Clavius, Christopher, 49.
- Clipper C300 computer, 2.
- Clock register, 19, 76, 112.
- CMP (compare), 9.
- CMPU (compare unsigned), 9, 113.
- Colon (:), 61, 65, 80.
- Command line arguments, 31, 90, 125.
- Comments, 29.
- Commutative law:  $a \circ b = b \circ a$ , 95.
- Comparison operators of MMIX, 9, 13, 25, 113.
- Compiler algorithms, 62, 74.
- Complement, 10, 24.
- Complete MMIX program, 30, 45.
- Conditional operators of MMIX, 10, 26.
- Conversion operators of MMIX, 13.
- Conway, Melvin Edward, 35.
- Copying a string, 47.
- Coroutines, 66–73.
  - linkage, 66, 72–73.
- Counting bits, 11.
- Coxeter, Harold Scott Macdonald, 48.
- CRAY I computer, 2.
- Crossword puzzle, 50–51.
- Cryptanalysis, 47.
- CSEV (conditional set if even), 10.
- CSN (conditional set if negative), 10.
- CSNN (conditional set if nonnegative), 10.
- CSNP (conditional set if nonpositive), 10.
- CSNZ (conditional set if nonzero), 10.
- CSOD (conditional set if odd), 10.
- CSP (conditional set if positive), 10.
- CSWAP (compare and swap), 17, 91.
- CSZ (conditional set if zero), 10.
- Current prefix, 61, 65.
- Cycle counter, 19.
- Cyclic shift, 26.
  
- D\_BIT (integer divide check bit), 18.
- Dallos, József, 97.
- Data segment of memory, 36, 57, 76–77, 81, 117.
- Debugging, 64–65, 73, 91.
- Decimal constant, 37.
- Defined symbol, 37.
- Denormal floating point number, 12, 89.
- Dershowitz, Nachum (נחום דרשוביץ), 111.
- Dickens, Charles John Huffam, iii.
- Dictionaries, iii.
- Dijkstra, Edsger Wijbe, 63.
- Discrete system simulators, 76.
- DIV (divide), 8, 24–25.
- Divide check, 8, 18.
- Dividend register, 9.
- Division, 9, 13, 24–25, 49, 91.
  - by small constants, 25.
  - by zero, 18.
  - converted to multiplication, 25, 111.
- DIVU (divide unsigned), 8.
- Double-quote ("), 31, 37, 44, 72, 100.
- Dull, Brutus Cyclops, 25.
- DVWIOUZX, 18, 27, 89, 92.
- Dynamic traps, 19.
  
- Easter date, 49.
- Emulator, 75.
- Enable bits, 18, 85.
- Ending a program, 19, 31.
- Entrances to subroutines, 52–57, 123.
- Epsilon register, 13.
- Equivalent of MMIXAL symbol, 38.
- Error recovery, 91.
- ESPEC (end special data), 62.
- Evaluation of powers, 28, 98.
- Evans, Arthur, Jr., 74.
- Event bits, 18, 85.
- Exabyte, 94.
- Exceptions, 18, 89.
- Execution register, 18.
- Exiting from a program, 19, 31.
- Exits from subroutines, 52–57, 115.
- Exponent of a floating point number, 12.
- Exponentiation, 28.
- EXPR field of MMIXAL line, 29, 38.
- Expression, in MMIXAL, 38.
- Extending the sign bit, 7, 9, 95.
  
- $f(x)$ , 12.
- FADD (floating add), 12.
- Fallacies, 95.
- Farey, John, 105.
  - series, 47.
- Fascicles, iii.
- Fclose operation, 41, 43.
- FCMP (floating compare), 13, 98.
- FCMPE (floating compare with respect to epsilon), 13.
- FDIV (floating divide), 12.
- FEQL (floating equal to), 13, 98.
- FEQLE (floating equivalent with respect to epsilon), 13.
- Fgets operation, 42, 43.
- Fgetws operation, 42, 43.
- Fibonacci, Leonardo, of Pisa.
  - numbers, 47, 66.
- Filters, 71.
- Finite fields, 26.

- FINT (floating integer), 13, 23.
- FIX (convert floating to fixed), 13.
- Fixed point arithmetic, 45.
- FIXU (convert floating to fixed unsigned), 13.
- Flag bits, 82, 87.
- Floating binary number, 12.
- Floating point arithmetic, 12–13, 44, 45, 89.
- Floating point operators of MMIX, 12–13.
- FLOT (convert fixed to floating), 13.
- FLOTU (convert fixed to floating unsigned), 13, 97.
- Floyd, Robert W, 98.
- FMUL (floating multiply), 12.
- Fopen operation, 41, 43, 92.
- Ford, Donald Floyd, 107.
- Forward reference, *see* Future reference.
- Fputs operation, 42, 43, 92.
- Fputws operation, 42, 43.
- Fraction of a floating point number, 12.
- Frame pointer, 58, 115.
- Fread operation, 42, 43, 92.
- Fredman, Michael Lawrence, 104.
- FREM (floating remainder), 13, 23, 44, 111.
- Fseek operation, 42, 43.
- FSQRT (floating square root), 13.
- FSUB (floating subtract), 12.
- Ftell operation, 43.
- Fuchs, David Raymond, 27, 74.
- FUN (floating unordered), 13, 98.
- FUNE (floating unordered with respect to epsilon), 13.
- Future reference, 37, 39.
- Fwrite operation, 42, 43, 124.
  
- Generalized matrix product, 11, 26.
- GET (get from special register), 19, 92.
- GETA (get address), 20, 100.
- Gigabyte, 94.
- Global registers, 16, 34, 58, 65, 79, 80, 84, 92.
- Global threshold register, 16.
- G0, 15, 26, 53–58.
- Gove, Philip Babcock, iii.
- Graphical display, 50–51.
- Graphics, 11, 26.
- GREG (allocate global register), 34–35, 39, 62.
  
- Half-bytes, 24.
- Halt operation, 31, 43.
- Handles, 41.
- Handlers, 18, 65, 89.
- Hardy, Godfrey Harold, 105.
- Harmonic convergence, 48.
- Harmonic series, 48–49.
- Haros, C., 105.
- Heller, Joseph, 3.
- Hello, world, 30–32, 125.
- Hennessy, John LeRoy, v.
- Hexadecimal constants, 37.
- Hexadecimal digits, 3, 24.
- Hexadecimal notation, 3, 19.
- High tetra arithmetic, 97.
- Hill, Robert, 111.
- Himult register, 8.
- Hints to MMIX, 16–17.
- Hitachi SuperH4 computer, 2.
- Hofri, Micha (מִיכָה חֶפְרִי), 104.
  
- I\_BIT (invalid floating operation bit), 18, 98.
- IBM 601 computer, 2.
- IBM 801 computer, 2.
- Ibn al-Haytham, Abū ‘Alī al-Ḥasan (= Alhazen, أبو علي الحسن بن الهيثم), 48.
- IEC: The International Electrotechnical Commission, 3.
- IEEE: The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers.
- floating point standard, 12, 89.
- Immediate constants, 13–14, 19.
- INCH (increase by high wyde), 14.
- INCL (increase by low wyde), 14.
- INCMH (increase by medium high wyde), 14.
- INCML (increase by medium low wyde), 14.
- Inexact exception, 18, 89.
- Ingalls, Daniel Henry Holmes, 109.
- Initialization, 31, 91.
- of coroutines, 70.
- Infinite floating point number, 12.
- int *x*, 13.
- Input-output operations, 19, 31, 40–43, 92.
- Instruction, machine language: A code that, when interpreted by the circuitry of a computer, causes the computer to perform some action.
- in MMIX, 5–28.
- numeric form, 27–29, 44.
- symbolic form, 28–40.
- Integer overflow, 6, 7, 18, 25, 27, 65, 84, 95, 109.
- Intel i960 computer, 2.
- Internet, ii, v.
- Interpreter, 73–75.
- Interrupt mask register, 19.
- Interrupt request register, 19.
- Interrupts, 18–19, 86, 89, 92.
- Interval counter, 19.
- Invalid floating operation, 18.
- IS, 30, 34, 39.
- ISO: The International Organization for Standardization, 3.
- Ivanović, Vladimir Gresham, v.
- Iverson, Kenneth Eugene, 11.

- Jacquet, Philippe Pierre, 104.  
 Java language, iv, 45.  
 JMP (jump), 15.  
 Joke, 72.  
 Josephus, Flavius, son of Matthias  
 (יהושפט בן יהוסף = Φλάβιος Ἰώσηπος  
 Ματθαίου), problem, 48.  
 Jump operators of MMIX, 15.  
 Jump table, 86–87.  
 Jump trace, 93.
- Kernel space, 36.  
 Kernighan, Brian Wilson, 23.  
 Kilobyte, 24, 94.  
 KKB (large kilobyte), 94.  
 Knuth, Donald Ervin (高德纳), i, v,  
 45, 65, 74, 89.
- LABEL field of MMIXAL line, 29, 38.  
 Large kilobyte, 94.  
 Large programs, 63–65.  
 LDA (load address), 7, 9, 100.  
 LDB (load byte), 6.  
 LDBU (load byte unsigned), 7.  
 LDHT (load high tetra), 7, 24, 97.  
 LDO (load octa), 6.  
 LDOU (load octa unsigned), 7.  
 LDSF (load short float), 13.  
 LDT (load tetra), 6.  
 LDTU (load tetra unsigned), 7.  
 LDUNC (load octa uncached), 17.  
 LDVTS (load virtual translation status), 17.  
 LDW (load wyde), 6.  
 LDWU (load wyde unsigned), 7.  
 Leaf subroutine, 57, 65, 80.  
 Library of subroutines, 52, 61, 62, 91.  
 Lilius, Aloysius, 49.  
 Linked allocation, 77–78.  
 Literate programming, 45, 65.  
 Little-endian convention: Least significant  
 byte first, *see* Bidirectional typesetting,  
 Byte reversal.  
 Loader, 36.  
 Loading operators of MMIX, 6–7.  
 LOC (change location), 30, 39.  
 LOCAL (guarantee locality), 62.  
 Local registers, 16, 58, 65, 80, 84, 92.  
 ring of, 76, 79–81, 92.  
 Local symbols, 35–37, 43.  
 Local threshold register, 16.  
 Loop optimization, 115.
- $m(x)$ , 11.  
 Machine language, 2.  
 Magic squares, 47–48.  
 Main location, 31, 91.  
 Marginal registers, 16, 58, 65, 80, 84, 97.  
 Matrix: A two-dimensional array, 46, 106.  
 Matrix multiplication, generalized, 11, 26.  
 Maximum, 26.  
 subroutine, 28–29, 52–56.  
 Megabyte, 24, 94.  
 MemFind subroutine, 77–78, 91, 116–117.  
 Memory: Part of a computer system  
 used to store data, 4–6.  
 address, 6.  
 hierarchy, 17, 22–23, 72, 98, 105, 107.  
 Memory stack, 57–58, 115.  
 Mems: Memory accesses, 22.  
 Meta-simulator, 22–23, 47, 76.  
 METAPOST language, 51.  
 Minimum, 26.  
 Minus zero, 13.  
 MIPS 4000 computer, 2.  
 MIX computer, iv.  
 .mmb (MMIX binary file), 125.  
 MMB (Large megabyte), 94.  
 MMIX computer, iv, 2–28.  
 MMIX simulator, 22–23, 30.  
 in MMIX, 75–93.  
 MMIXAL: MMIX Assembly Language,  
 28–44, 61–62.  
 MMIXmasters, v, 51, 105, 111.  
 MMIXware document, 2.  
 .mmo (MMIX object file), 30, 125.  
 .mms (MMIX symbolic file), 30, 125.  
 MOR (multiple or), 12, 23, 26.  
 Motorola 88000 computer, 2.  
 Move-to-front heuristic, 77–78.  
 Mu ( $\mu$ ), 22.  
 MUL (multiply), 8.  
 Multipass algorithms, 70–72, 74.  
 Multiple entrances, 56, 123.  
 Multiple exits, 56–57, 60, 115.  
 Multiplex mask register, 11.  
 Multiplication, 8, 12, 25, 85.  
 by small constants, 9, 25.  
 Multiway decisions, 45, 46, 82, 86–88, 119.  
 MULU (multiply unsigned), 8, 25.  
 Murray, James Augustus Henry, iii.  
 MUX (multiplex), 11.  
 MXOR (multiple exclusive-or), 12, 23, 26.
- NaN (Not-a-Number), 12, 98.  
 NAND (bitwise not-and), 10.  
 NEG (negate), 9.  
 Negation, 9, 24.  
 NEGU (negate unsigned), 9.  
 Newline, 32, 42.  
 NNIX operating system, 28, 31.  
 No-op, 21, 28.  
 Nonlocal **goto** statements, 66, 91, 117.  
 NOR (bitwise not-or), 10.  
 Normal floating point number, 12.  
 Not-a-Number, 12, 98.

## Notational conventions:

$b(x)$ , 11.  
 $f(x)$ , 12.  
 $\text{int } x$ , 13.  
 $m(x)$ , 11.  
 $s(x)$ , 6, 24.  
 $t(x)$ , 11.  
 $u(x)$ , 6, 24.  
 $v(x)$ , 10.  
 $\bar{v}(x)$ , 10.  
 $w(x)$ , 11.  
 $x \dot{-} y$ , 11.  
 $x \gg y$ , 9.  
 $x \ll y$ , 9.  
 $x \wedge y$ , 10.  
 $x \vee y$ , 10.  
 $x \oplus y$ , 10.  
 $x \bmod y$ , 13.  
XYZ, 6.  
YZ, 5–6.  
NXOR (bitwise not-exclusive-or), 10.  
Nybble: A 4-bit quantity, 24.  
Nyp: A 2-bit quantity, 94.  
  
O\_BIT (floating overflow bit), 18.  
O’Beirne, Thomas Hay, 111.  
Object file, 30–31, 125.  
Octa: Short form of “octabyte”, 4.  
OCTA operator, 39.  
Octabyte: A 64-bit quantity, 4.  
ODIF (octa difference), 11, 102.  
Oops, 22.  
OP field of MMIXAL line, 29, 38.  
Opcode: Operation code, 5, 19.  
    chart, 20.  
Operands, 5, 83–84.  
Operating system, 28, 36, 40–43.  
Optimization of loops, 47.  
OR (bitwise or), 10.  
ORH (bitwise or with high wyde), 14.  
ORL (bitwise or with low wyde), 14.  
ORMH (bitwise or with medium high wyde), 14.  
ORML (bitwise or with medium low wyde), 14.  
ORN (bitwise or-not), 10.  
Overflow, 6, 7, 18, 25, 27, 65, 84, 95, 109.  
Oxford English Dictionary, iii.  
  
Packed data, 82, 87–88.  
Page fault, 114.  
Parameters, 54.  
Parity, 26.  
Pascal language, iv.  
Pass, in a program, 70–72.  
Patt, Yale Nance, 98.  
PBEV (probable branch if even), 16.  
PBN (probable branch if negative), 15.  
PBNN (probable branch if nonnegative), 15.  
PBNP (probable branch if nonpositive), 16.

PBNZ (probable branch if nonzero), 16.  
PBOD (probable branch if odd), 15.  
PBP (probable branch if positive), 15.  
PBZ (probable branch if zero), 15.  
Petabyte, 94.  
Phi ( $\phi$ ), 8, 47.  
Pipe, 71.  
Pipeline, 22, 47, 76, 98.  
Pixel values, 11, 26.  
PL/360 language, 45.  
PL/MMIX language, 45, 63.  
Pool segment of memory, 36, 117.  
POP (pop registers and return), 16,  
    53, 59, 73, 92.  
Population counting, 11.  
PostScript language, 74.  
POWER 2 computer, 2.  
Power of number, evaluation, 28.  
Predefined symbols, 36–38, 43.  
Prediction register, 17.  
PREFIX specification, 61–62, 65, 77–78, 80.  
Prefetching, 17, 22.  
Prefixes for units of measure, 94.  
PREGO (prefetch to go), 17.  
PRELD (preload data), 17.  
PREST (prestore data), 17.  
Primary, in MMIXAL, 38.  
Prime numbers, program to compute,  
    32–34, 37.  
Privileged instructions, 46, 76.  
Probable branch, 15–16, 22, 26, 85.  
Profile of a program: The number of  
    times each instruction is performed,  
    29, 31, 93, 98.  
Program construction, 63–65.  
Programming languages, iv, 63.  
Pseudo-operations, 30–31.  
Purdy, Gregor Neal, 94.  
PUSHGO (push registers and go), 16,  
    65, 73, 85–86.  
PUSHJ (push registers and jump), 16,  
    53, 59, 73, 85–86.  
PUT (put into special register), 19, 92.  
  
Quick, Jonathan Horatio, 44.  
  
rA (arithmetic status register), 18, 28.  
RA (relative address), 15.  
Radix point, 8, 24.  
Randell, Brian, 74.  
Randolph, Vance, 28.  
Rational numbers, 47.  
rB (bootstrap register for trips), 18.  
rBB (bootstrap register for traps), 18.  
rC (cycle counter), 19, 112.  
rD (dividend register), 9.  
rE (epsilon register), 13.  
Reachability, 51.  
Read-only access, 36.



- Recursive use of subroutines, 57, 66, 125–126.
- Register \$0, 31, 58.
- Register \$1, 31, 58.
- Register \$255, 34, 40–43, 56, 68, 114.
- Register number, 34, 58.
- Register stack, 16, 58–61, 65–66, 70, 73, 78–81, 84–86, 115.
- Register stack offset, 17.
- Register stack pointer, 17.
- Registers: Portions of a computer's internal circuitry in which data is most accessible.
- of MMIX, 4–5, 21, 23, 76, 79.
- saving and restoring, 55; *see also* **SAVE**, **UNSAVE**.
- Reingold, Edward Martin (ריינולד, יצחק משה בן חיים), 111.
- Relative addresses, 15–16, 20, 30, 83, 87, 99.
- Remainder, 8, 13, 49.
- Remainder register, 8.
- Replicated coroutines, 72.
- Reprogramming, 75.
- RESUME** (resume after interrupt), 19, 84, 92, 114, 126.
- Return-jump register, 16.
- Reversal of bits and bytes, 12, 26, 97.
- Rewinding a file, 42.
- Rewrites, v, 64.
- rG (global threshold register), 16, 58, 92.
- rH (himult register), 8, 28, 85, 94.
- rI (interval counter), 19.
- Ring of local registers, 76, 79–81, 92.
- RISC**: Reduced Instruction Set Computer, 24.
- RISC II** computer, 2.
- rJ (return-jump register), 16, 60, 80, 81.
- rK (interrupt mask register), 19, 90–91.
- rL (local threshold register), 16, 28, 58, 79, 92, 97, 117.
- rM (multiplex mask register), 11.
- rN (serial number), 19.
- rO (register stack offset), 17, 79.
- Rokicki, Tomas Gerhard, 74.
- Roman numerals, 2, 3.
- Ropcodes, 19, 92.
- ROUND\_DOWN** mode, 13.
- ROUND\_NEAR** mode, 13, 37.
- ROUND\_OFF** mode, 13.
- ROUND\_UP** mode, 13.
- Rounding, 13, 18, 47, 48.
- Row major order, 46.
- rP (prediction register), 17.
- rQ (interrupt request register), 19.
- rR (remainder register), 8.
- rS (register stack pointer), 17, 79.
- rT (trap address register), 18, 90–91.
- rTT (dynamic trap address register), 19, 90–91.
- rU (usage counter), 19.
- Running time, 20–23.
- Russell, Lawford John, 74.
- rV (virtual translation register), 20, 90–91.
- rW (where-interrupted register for trips), 18.
- rWW (where-interrupted register for traps), 18.
- rX (execution register for trips), 18.
- rXX (execution register for traps), 18.
- rY (Y operand register for trips), 18.
- rYY (Y operand register for traps), 18.
- rZ (Z operand register for trips), 18.
- rZZ (Z operand register for traps), 18.
- $s(x)$ , 6, 24.
- SADD** (sideways add), 11.
- Saddle point, 46.
- Saturating addition, 26.
- Saturating subtraction, 11.
- SAVE** (save process state), 16, 61, 92, 114, 116.
- Saving and restoring registers, 55; *see also* **SAVE**, **UNSAVE**.
- Scalar variables, 61.
- Schäffer, Alejandro Alberto, 104.
- Segments of user space, 36.
- Self-modifying code, iv, 28, 93.
- Self-organizing list search, 77–78.
- Self-reference, 126, 132.
- Sequential array allocation, 46.
- Serial number register, 19.
- SET**, 14, 99.
- Set difference, 25.
- Set intersection, 25.
- Set union, 25.
- SETH** (set high wyde), 14.
- SETL** (set low wyde), 14, 100.
- SETMH** (set medium high wyde), 14, 97.
- SETML** (set medium low wyde), 14.
- SFLOT** (convert fixed to short float), 13.
- SFLOTU** (convert fixed to short float unsigned), 13.
- Shift operators of MMIX, 9.
- Shor, Peter Williston, 104.
- Short float format, 12–13.
- Sideways addition, 11.
- Sign extension, 7, 9, 95.
- Sign of floating point number, 12.
- Signed integers, 4, 6–7, 25.
- Sikes, William, iii.
- Simon, Marvin Neil, v.
- Simulation of computers, 75–76.
- Sites, Richard Lee, v.
- SL** (shift left), 9, 25.
- SLU** (shift left unsigned), 9, 25.
- Small constant numbers, 9, 13.
- division by, 25.
- multiplication by, 9, 25.
- Sparc 64 computer, 2.
- Special registers of MMIX, 5, 19, 21, 76, 118.

- Square root, 13.
- SR (shift right), 9, 25.
- SRU (shift right unsigned), 9, 25.
- Stack offset register, 79.
- Stack operators of MMIX, 16–17.
- Stack pointer register, 57–58, 79.
- Stack segment of memory, 36, 61, 114, 117.
- Stacks, *see* Memory stack, Register stack.
- Stalling a pipeline, 108.
- Standard error file, 41.
- Standard input file, 41.
- Standard output file, 31, 41.
- Starting a program, 31, 70, 91.
- STB (store byte), 7.
- STBU (store byte unsigned), 8.
- STCO (store constant octabyte), 8.
- StdErr (standard error file), 41.
- StdIn (standard input file), 41.
- StdOut (standard output file), 30–31, 41.
- STHT (store high tetra), 8, 24, 97.
- STO (store octa), 7.
- Storing operators of MMIX, 7–8.
- STOU (store octa unsigned), 8.
- Stretch computer, 94.
- String constant in MMIXAL, 31, 37, 100.
- String manipulation, 26, 47.
- Strong binary operators, 38.
- StrongArm 110 computer, 2.
- Structured symbols, 61–62, 65, 77–78, 80.
- STSF (store short float), 13.
- STT (store tetra), 7.
- STTU (store tetra unsigned), 8.
- STUNC (store octa uncached), 17.
- STW (store wyde), 7.
- STWU (store wyde unsigned), 8.
- SUB (subtract), 8.
- Subroutines, 30, 45, 52–70, 75, 77–81, 92.
  - linkage of, 52–61.
- Subsets, representation of, 25.
- Subtraction, 8, 12, 25.
- SUBU (subtract unsigned), 8.
- Superscalar machine, 108.
- Suri, Subhash (सुभाष सूरी), 104.
- Switching tables, 45, 46, 82, 86–88, 119.
- SWYM (sympathize with your machinery), 21.
- SYNC (synchronize), 17, 86.
- SYNCD (synchronize data), 17.
- SYNCID (synchronize instructions and data), 17, 28.
- System operators of MMIX, 17.
- System/360 computer, 45.
  
- $t(x)$ , 11.
- Table-driven computation, 45, 46, 82, 86–88, 119.
- TDIF (tetra difference), 11.
- Terabyte, 94.
- Term, in MMIXAL, 38.
- Terminating a program, 19, 31.
  
- Tetra: Short form of “tetrabyte”, 4.
- Tetra difference, 11.
- TETRA operator, 39, 72.
- Tetrabyte: A 32-bit quantity, 4.
- Tetrabyte arithmetic, 27.
- TeX, 65, 74–75.
- Text file, 41.
- Text segment of memory, 36, 77, 81.
- TextRead mode, 43.
- TextWrite mode, 43.
- Threads, 72.
- Trace routine, 64, 93.
- Traffic signals, 50.
- TRAP (force trap interrupt), 18–19, 40, 86–87.
- Trap address register, 18.
- Trap handlers, 18–19.
- TRIP (force trip interrupt), 18, 86.
- Trip handlers, 18, 89.
- Trip interrupts, 65, 92.
- Turing, Alan Mathison, 65.
- Twist, Oliver, iii.
- Two's complement notation, 4, 24.
  
- $u(x)$ , 6, 24.
- U\_BIT (floating underflow bit), 18, 85, 89.
- U\_Handler: Address of an underflow trip, 89.
- UCS: Universal Multiple-Octet Coded Character Set, 3.
- Underflow, 18, 89.
- Underscore ( $\_$ ), 37.
- Unicode, 3, 26, 37, 44.
- Units of measure, 94.
- UNIVAC I computer, 35.
- UNIX operating system, 71, 114.
- Unpacking, 82.
- Unrolling a loop, 107.
- UNSAVE (restore process state), 16, 61, 90, 92, 116.
- Unsigned integers, 4, 6–8.
- Upsilon ( $v$ ), 22.
- Usage counter, 19.
- User space, 36.
  
- $v(x)$ ,  $\bar{v}(x)$ , 10.
- V\_BIT (integer overflow bit), 18.
- Valid MMIX instruction, 46.
- Van Wyk, Christopher John, 23.
- Vector, 10.
- Victorius of Aquitania, 111.
- Virtual address translation, 17.
- Virtual machine, 73.
- Virtual translation register, 20.

- $w(x)$ , 11.
- W\_BIT (float-to-fix overflow bit), 18.
- W\_Handler: Address of a float-to-fix overflow trip, 37.
- WDIF (wyde difference), 11.
- Weak binary operators, 38.
- Webster, Noah, iii.
- Where-interrupted register, 18.
- Whitespace character, 67.
- Wide strings, 42.
- Wilson, George Pickett, 28.
- Wirth, Niklaus Emil, 45, 63.
- Wordsworth, William, 24.
- Wright, Edward Maitland, 105.
- Wyde: A 16-bit quantity, 4.
- Wyde difference, 11.
- Wyde immediate, 14.
- WYDE operator, 39.
- X field of MMIX instruction, 5.
- X\_BIT (floating inexact bit), 18, 89.
- XOR (bitwise exclusive-or), 10.
- XYZ field of MMIX instruction, 6.
- Y field of MMIX instruction, 5.
- Y operand register, 18.
- Yoder, Michael Franz, 95.
- Yossarian, John, 3.
- Yottabyte, 94.
- YZ field of MMIX instruction, 5–6.
- Z field of MMIX instruction, 5.
  - as immediate constant, 14.
- Z operand register, 18.
- Z\_BIT (floating division by zero bit), 18.
- Zero or set instructions of MMIX, 10.
- Zettabyte, 94.
- ZSEV (zero or set if even), 10.
- ZSN (zero or set if negative), 10.
- ZSNN (zero or set if nonnegative), 10.
- ZSNP (zero or set if nonpositive), 10.
- ZSNZ (zero or set if nonzero), 10.
- ZSOD (zero or set if odd), 10.
- ZSP (zero or set if positive), 10.
- ZSZ (zero or set if zero), 10.

# ASCII CHARACTERS

|     | #0 | #1 | #2 | #3 | #4 | #5 | #6 | #7 | #8 | #9 | #a | #b | #c | #d | #e | #f |     |
|-----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
| #2x |    | !  | "  | #  | \$ | %  | &  | '  | (  | )  | *  | +  | ,  | -  | .  | /  | #2x |
| #3x | 0  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | :  | ;  | <  | =  | >  | ?  | #3x |
| #4x | @  | A  | B  | C  | D  | E  | F  | G  | H  | I  | J  | K  | L  | M  | N  | O  | #4x |
| #5x | P  | Q  | R  | S  | T  | U  | V  | W  | X  | Y  | Z  | [  | \  | ]  | ^  | _  | #5x |
| #6x | '  | a  | b  | c  | d  | e  | f  | g  | h  | i  | j  | k  | l  | m  | n  | o  | #6x |
| #7x | p  | q  | r  | s  | t  | u  | v  | w  | x  | y  | z  | {  |    | }  | ~  | ■  | #7x |
|     | #0 | #1 | #2 | #3 | #4 | #5 | #6 | #7 | #8 | #9 | #a | #b | #c | #d | #e | #f |     |

# MMIX OPERATION CODES

|     | #0           | #1        | #2             | #3       | #4             | #5        | #6           | #7      |     |
|-----|--------------|-----------|----------------|----------|----------------|-----------|--------------|---------|-----|
| #0x | TRAP 5v      | FCMP v    | FUN v          | FEQL v   | FADD 4v        | FIX 4v    | FSUB 4v      | FIXU 4v | #0x |
|     | FLOT[I] 4v   |           | FLOTU[I] 4v    |          | SFLOT[I] 4v    |           | SFLOTU[I] 4v |         |     |
| #1x | FMUL 4v      | FCMPE 4v  | FUNE v         | FEQLE 4v | FDIV 40v       | FSQRT 40v | FREM 4v      | FINT 4v | #1x |
|     | MUL[I] 10v   |           | MULU[I] 10v    |          | DIV[I] 60v     |           | DIVU[I] 60v  |         |     |
| #2x | ADD[I] v     |           | ADDU[I] v      |          | SUB[I] v       |           | SUBU[I] v    |         | #2x |
|     | 2ADDU[I] v   |           | 4ADDU[I] v     |          | 8ADDU[I] v     |           | 16ADDU[I] v  |         |     |
| #3x | CMP[I] v     |           | CMPU[I] v      |          | NEG[I] v       |           | NEGU[I] v    |         | #3x |
|     | SL[I] v      |           | SLU[I] v       |          | SR[I] v        |           | SRU[I] v     |         |     |
| #4x | BN[B] v+π    |           | BZ[B] v+π      |          | BP[B] v+π      |           | BOD[B] v+π   |         | #4x |
|     | BNN[B] v+π   |           | BNZ[B] v+π     |          | BNP[B] v+π     |           | BEV[B] v+π   |         |     |
| #5x | PBN[B] 3v−π  |           | PBZ[B] 3v−π    |          | PBP[B] 3v−π    |           | PBOD[B] 3v−π |         | #5x |
|     | PBNN[B] 3v−π |           | PBNZ[B] 3v−π   |          | PBNP[B] 3v−π   |           | PBEV[B] 3v−π |         |     |
| #6x | CSN[I] v     |           | CSZ[I] v       |          | CSP[I] v       |           | CSOD[I] v    |         | #6x |
|     | CSNN[I] v    |           | CSNZ[I] v      |          | CSNP[I] v      |           | CSEV[I] v    |         |     |
| #7x | ZSN[I] v     |           | ZSZ[I] v       |          | ZSP[I] v       |           | ZSOD[I] v    |         | #7x |
|     | ZSNN[I] v    |           | ZSNZ[I] v      |          | ZSNP[I] v      |           | ZSEV[I] v    |         |     |
| #8x | LDB[I] μ+v   |           | LDBU[I] μ+v    |          | LDW[I] μ+v     |           | LDWU[I] μ+v  |         | #8x |
|     | LDT[I] μ+v   |           | LDTU[I] μ+v    |          | LDO[I] μ+v     |           | LDOU[I] μ+v  |         |     |
| #9x | LDSF[I] μ+v  |           | LDHT[I] μ+v    |          | CSWAP[I] 2μ+2v |           | LDUNC[I] μ+v |         | #9x |
|     | LDVTS[I] v   |           | PRELD[I] v     |          | PREGO[I] v     |           | GO[I] 3v     |         |     |
| #Ax | STB[I] μ+v   |           | STBU[I] μ+v    |          | STW[I] μ+v     |           | STWU[I] μ+v  |         | #Ax |
|     | STT[I] μ+v   |           | STTU[I] μ+v    |          | STO[I] μ+v     |           | STOU[I] μ+v  |         |     |
| #Bx | STSF[I] μ+v  |           | STHT[I] μ+v    |          | STCO[I] μ+v    |           | STUNC[I] μ+v |         | #Bx |
|     | SYNCD[I] v   |           | PREST[I] v     |          | SYNCID[I] v    |           | PUSHGO[I] 3v |         |     |
| #Cx | OR[I] v      |           | ORN[I] v       |          | NOR[I] v       |           | XOR[I] v     |         | #Cx |
|     | AND[I] v     |           | ANDN[I] v      |          | NAND[I] v      |           | NXOR[I] v    |         |     |
| #Dx | BDIF[I] v    |           | WDIF[I] v      |          | TDIF[I] v      |           | ODIF[I] v    |         | #Dx |
|     | MUX[I] v     |           | SADD[I] v      |          | MOR[I] v       |           | MXOR[I] v    |         |     |
| #Ex | SETH v       | SETMH v   | SETML v        | SETL v   | INCH v         | INCMH v   | INCL v       | INCL v  | #Ex |
|     | ORH v        | ORMH v    | ORML v         | ORL v    | ANDNH v        | ANDNMH v  | ANDNML v     | ANDNL v |     |
| #Fx | JMP[B] v     |           | PUSHJ[B] v     |          | GETA[B] v      |           | PUT[I] v     |         | #Fx |
|     | POP 3v       | RESUME 5v | [UN]SAVE 20μ+v |          | SYNC v         | SWYM v    | GET v        | TRIP 5v |     |
|     | #8           | #9        | #A             | #B       | #C             | #D        | #E           | #F      |     |

$\pi = 2v$  if the branch is taken,  $\pi = 0$  if the branch is not taken